

**Oracle® Database**

XML C API Reference

12c Release 2 (12.2)

**E49968-04**

January 2017

Oracle Database XML C API Reference, 12c Release 2 (12.2)

E49968-04

Copyright © 2001, 2017, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Tulika Das

Contributing Authors: Roza Leyderman, Anguel Novoselsky, Ian Macky, Vijay Medi

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

---

---

# Contents

Preface .....	xix
Audience .....	xix
Documentation Accessibility .....	xix
Related Documents.....	xix
Conventions.....	xx
<b>1 Datatypes for XML C APIs</b>	
oracheck.....	1-2
oraerr .....	1-3
oraprop_id .....	1-3
oramemctx .....	1-3
oraprop .....	1-3
oraprop_t.....	1-3
oraprop_v.....	1-3
orastream.....	1-4
orastreamhdl.....	1-4
xmlcmphow .....	1-4
xmlctx .....	1-4
xmldfoftype .....	1-5
xmldfsrct .....	1-5
xmlerr .....	1-5
xmlevctx .....	1-6
xmlevtype.....	1-6
xmlhasht.....	1-6
xmlstream .....	1-7
xmliter.....	1-7
xmlnodetype.....	1-8
xmlostream .....	1-8
xmlpoint .....	1-9
xmlrange .....	1-9
xmlsoapbind .....	1-9
xmlsoapcon.....	1-9

xmlsoapctx .....	1-10
xmlsoaprole .....	1-10
xmlshowbits.....	1-10
xmlurlacc.....	1-10
xmlurlhdl .....	1-11
xmlurlpart.....	1-11
xmlxptrloc.....	1-11
xmlxptrlocset.....	1-12
xmlxslobjtype .....	1-12
xmlxslomethod.....	1-12
xmlxvm.....	1-12
xmlxvmcomp.....	1-12
xmlxvmflags .....	1-13
xmlxvmobjtype.....	1-13
xpctx.....	1-13
xpexpr.....	1-13
xpobj.....	1-13
xsdctx.....	1-14
xslctx .....	1-14
xvmobj.....	1-14

## 2 Package Callback for XML C APIs

XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F() .....	2-1
XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F().....	2-1
XML_ACCESS_READ_F().....	2-1
XML_ALLOC_F().....	2-1
XML_ERRMSG_F().....	2-2
XML_FREE_F().....	2-2
XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F().....	2-2
XML_STREAM_OPEN_F().....	2-2
XML_STREAM_READ_F().....	2-2
XML_STREAM_WRITE_F().....	2-3

## 3 Package DOM for XML C APIs

Attr Interface for DOM XML C APIs .....	3-1
XmlDomGetAttrLocal().....	3-2
XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen() .....	3-2
XmlDomGetAttrName().....	3-3
XmlDomGetAttrNameLen() .....	3-4
XmlDomGetAttrPrefix() .....	3-5
XmlDomGetAttrSpecified() .....	3-5
XmlDomGetAttrURI() .....	3-6
XmlDomGetAttrURILen().....	3-7

XmlDomGetAttrValue() .....	3-8
XmlDomGetAttrValueLen() .....	3-8
XmlDomGetAttrValueStream().....	3-9
XmlDomGetOwnerElem() .....	3-10
XmlDomSetAttrValue().....	3-10
XmlDomSetAttrValueStream().....	3-11
CharacterData Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-11
XmlDomAppendData() .....	3-12
XmlDomDeleteData() .....	3-13
XmlDomGetCharData().....	3-13
XmlDomGetCharDataLength() .....	3-14
XmlDomInsertData() .....	3-15
XmlDomReplaceData().....	3-15
XmlDomSetCharData().....	3-16
XmlDomSubstringData().....	3-17
Document Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-18
XmlDomCreateAttr() .....	3-19
XmlDomCreateAttrNS().....	3-20
XmlDomCreateCDATA().....	3-21
XmlDomCreateComment().....	3-22
XmlDomCreateElem() .....	3-22
XmlDomCreateElemNS() .....	3-23
XmlDomCreateEntityRef().....	3-24
XmlDomCreateFragment() .....	3-25
XmlDomCreatePI().....	3-25
XmlDomCreateText().....	3-26
XmlDomFreeString().....	3-27
XmlDomGetBaseURI().....	3-27
XmlDomGetDTD() .....	3-28
XmlDomGetDecl().....	3-29
XmlDomGetDocElem().....	3-29
XmlDomGetDocElemByID().....	3-30
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag().....	3-31
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS() .....	3-31
XmlDomGetLastError() .....	3-32
XmlDomGetSchema() .....	3-33
XmlDomImportNode().....	3-33
XmlDomIsSchemaBased().....	3-34
XmlDomSaveString() .....	3-35
XmlDomSaveString2() .....	3-36
XmlDomSetBaseURI().....	3-36
XmlDomSetDTD() .....	3-37
XmlDomSetDocOrder().....	3-38

XmlDomSetLastError() .....	3-38
XmlDomSync().....	3-39
DocumentType Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-39
XmlDomGetDTDEntities().....	3-39
XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset().....	3-40
XmlDomGetDTDName() .....	3-41
XmlDomGetDTDNotations().....	3-41
XmlDomGetDTDPubID().....	3-42
XmlDomGetDTDSysID().....	3-42
Element Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-43
XmlDomGetAttr() .....	3-44
XmlDomGetAttrNS() .....	3-44
XmlDomGetAttrNode().....	3-45
XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS() .....	3-45
XmlDomGetChildrenByTag().....	3-46
XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS() .....	3-47
XmlDomGetElemsByTag().....	3-48
XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS() .....	3-48
XmlDomGetTag() .....	3-49
XmlDomHasAttr().....	3-50
XmlDomHasAttrNS() .....	3-50
XmlDomRemoveAttr() .....	3-51
XmlDomRemoveAttrNS().....	3-52
XmlDomRemoveAttrNode() .....	3-52
XmlDomSetAttr() .....	3-53
XmlDomSetAttrNS().....	3-54
XmlDomSetAttrNode().....	3-54
XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS() .....	3-55
Entity Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-56
XmlDomGetEntityNotation() .....	3-56
XmlDomGetEntityPubID().....	3-56
XmlDomGetEntitySysID().....	3-57
XmlDomGetEntityType() .....	3-57
NamedNodeMap Interface for DOM XML C APIs .....	3-58
XmlDomGetNamedItem() .....	3-58
XmlDomGetNamedItemNS() .....	3-59
XmlDomGetNodeMapItem().....	3-60
XmlDomGetNodeMapLength() .....	3-61
XmlDomRemoveNamedItem() .....	3-61
XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS().....	3-62
XmlDomSetNamedItem() .....	3-62
XmlDomSetNamedItemNS().....	3-63
Node Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-64

XmlDomAppendChild()	3-66
XmlDomCleanNode()	3-67
XmlDomCloneNode()	3-68
XmlDomFreeNode()	3-68
XmlDomGetAttrs()	3-69
XmlDomGetChildNodes()	3-69
XmlDomGetDefaultNS()	3-70
XmlDomGetFirstChild()	3-70
XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair()	3-71
XmlDomGetLastChild()	3-72
XmlDomGetNextPfnPair()	3-72
XmlDomGetNextSibling()	3-73
XmlDomGetNodeLocal()	3-73
XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()	3-74
XmlDomGetNodeName()	3-75
XmlDomGetNodeNameLen()	3-76
XmlDomGetNodePrefix()	3-77
XmlDomGetNodeType()	3-77
XmlDomGetNodeURI()	3-78
XmlDomGetNodeURILen()	3-79
XmlDomGetNodeValue()	3-80
XmlDomGetNodeValueLen()	3-81
XmlDomGetNodeValueStream()	3-82
XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()	3-82
XmlDomGetParentNode()	3-83
XmlDomGetPrevSibling()	3-83
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-84
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-84
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()	3-85
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()	3-85
XmlDomGetSourceEntity()	3-86
XmlDomGetSourceLine()	3-86
XmlDomGetSourceLocation()	3-87
XmlDomHasAttrs()	3-87
XmlDomHasChildNodes()	3-87
XmlDomInsertBefore()	3-88
XmlDomNormalize()	3-89
XmlDomNumAttrs()	3-89
XmlDomNumChildNodes()	3-89
XmlDomPrefixToURI()	3-90
XmlDomRemoveChild()	3-90
XmlDomRenameNode()	3-91
XmlDomRenameNodeNS()	3-92

XmlDomReplaceChild() .....	3-92
XmlDomSetDefaultNS() .....	3-93
XmlDomSetNodePrefix() .....	3-93
XmlDomSetNodeValue() .....	3-94
XmlDomSetNodeValueLen().....	3-95
XmlDomSetNodeValueStream() .....	3-95
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream().....	3-96
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream() .....	3-96
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream() .....	3-97
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream() .....	3-97
XmlDomValidate() .....	3-98
NodeList Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-98
XmlDomFreeNodeList() .....	3-99
XmlDomGetNodeListItem() .....	3-99
XmlDomGetNodeListLength().....	3-100
Notation Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-100
XmlDomGetNotationPubID().....	3-100
XmlDomGetNotationSysID().....	3-101
ProcessingInstruction Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-101
XmlDomGetPIData().....	3-102
XmlDomGetPITarget().....	3-102
XmlDomSetPIData().....	3-103
Text Interface for DOM XML C APIs.....	3-103
XmlDomSplitText() .....	3-104

#### 4 Package Event for XML C APIs

XmlEvCleanPPCtx() .....	4-5
XmlEvCreatePPCtx() .....	4-6
XmlEvCreateSVCtx().....	4-7
XmlEvDestroyPPCtx().....	4-8
XmlEvDestroySVCtx() .....	4-8
XmlEvGetAttrCount().....	4-9
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody().....	4-9
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0().....	4-10
XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount().....	4-10
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName().....	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName0().....	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName().....	4-11
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0().....	4-12
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName() .....	4-12
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0() .....	4-13
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix().....	4-13
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0().....	4-14



XmlEvGetAttrID().....	4-14
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName().....	4-15
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0().....	4-15
XmlEvGetAttrName() .....	4-16
XmlEvGetAttrName0() .....	4-16
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix().....	4-17
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0().....	4-17
XmlEvGetAttrURI().....	4-18
XmlEvGetAttrURI0().....	4-18
XmlEvGetAttrUriID().....	4-19
XmlEvGetAttrValue().....	4-19
XmlEvGetAttrValue0().....	4-20
XmlEvGetElDeclContent().....	4-20
XmlEvGetElDeclContent0().....	4-21
XmlEvGetEncoding() .....	4-21
XmlEvGetError().....	4-21
XmlEvGetName().....	4-22
XmlEvGetName0().....	4-22
XmlEvGetLocalName() .....	4-23
XmlEvGetLocalName0() .....	4-23
XmlEvGetLocation() .....	4-24
XmlEvGetPIData() .....	4-24
XmlEvGetPIData0() .....	4-25
XmlEvGetPITarget() .....	4-25
XmlEvGetPITarget0() .....	4-26
XmlEvGetPEIsGen() .....	4-26
XmlEvGetPERepl() .....	4-26
XmlEvGetPERepl0() .....	4-27
XmlEvGetPrefix().....	4-27
XmlEvGetPrefix0().....	4-28
XmlEvGetPubId() .....	4-28
XmlEvGetPubId0() .....	4-29
XmlEvGetSysId() .....	4-29
XmlEvGetSysId0() .....	4-30
XmlEvGetTagID() .....	4-30
XmlEvGetTagUriID() .....	4-31
XmlEvGetText().....	4-31
XmlEvGetText0().....	4-32
XmlEvGetUENdata().....	4-32
XmlEvGetUENdata0().....	4-33
XmlEvGetURI() .....	4-33
XmlEvGetURI0() .....	4-34
XmlEvGetVersion().....	4-34

XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified() .....	4-34
XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr().....	4-35
XmlEvIsStandalone().....	4-35
XmlEvNext().....	4-36
XmlEvNextTag() .....	4-36
XmlEvLoadPPDoc().....	4-36
XmlEvSchemaValidate().....	4-37

## 5 Package Orastream for XML C APIs

OraStreamClose().....	5-2
OraStreamHandle() .....	5-2
OraStreamInit() .....	5-3
OraStreamIsOpen().....	5-4
OraStreamOpen().....	5-4
OraStreamRead() .....	5-5
OraStreamReadable() .....	5-6
OraStreamReadChar().....	5-6
OraStreamSid().....	5-7
OraStreamTerm().....	5-7
OraStreamWrite().....	5-7
OraStreamWritable() .....	5-8
OraStreamWriteChar().....	5-8

## 6 Package Range for XML C APIs

XmlDomCreateRange().....	6-2
XmlDomRangeClone().....	6-2
XmlDomRangeCloneContents().....	6-3
XmlDomRangeCollapse().....	6-3
XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints() .....	6-4
XmlDomRangeDeleteContents().....	6-5
XmlDomRangeDetach().....	6-5
XmlDomRangeExtractContents().....	6-5
XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed() .....	6-6
XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor().....	6-6
XmlDomRangeGetDetached() .....	6-7
XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer() .....	6-7
XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset() .....	6-8
XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer() .....	6-8
XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset().....	6-9
XmlDomRangeIsConsistent().....	6-9
XmlDomRangeSelectNode() .....	6-10
XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents() .....	6-10
XmlDomRangeSetEnd().....	6-11

XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore()	6-12
XmlDomRangeSetStart()	6-12
XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()	6-13
XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()	6-13

## 7 Package SAX for XML C APIs

XmlSaxAttributeDecl()	7-2
XmlSaxBeginGen()	7-2
XmlSaxCDATA()	7-3
XmlSaxCharacters()	7-3
XmlSaxComment()	7-4
XmlSaxElementDecl()	7-4
XmlSaxEndDocument()	7-5
XmlSaxEndElement()	7-6
XmlSaxEndGen()	7-6
XmlSaxNotationDecl()	7-6
XmlSaxPI()	7-6
XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()	7-7
XmlSaxStartDocument()	7-8
XmlSaxStartElement()	7-8
XmlSaxStartElementNS()	7-9
XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl()	7-10
XmlSaxWhitespace()	7-10
XmlSaxXmlDecl()	7-11

## 8 Package Schema for XML C APIs

XmlSchemaCreate()	8-1
XmlSchemaDestroy()	8-2
XmlSchemaErrorWhere()	8-2
XmlSchemaLoad()	8-3
XmlSchemaLoadedList()	8-4
XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler()	8-4
XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions()	8-5
XmlSchemaTargetNamespace()	8-6
XmlSchemaUnload()	8-6
XmlSchemaValidate()	8-7
XmlSchemaVersion()	8-8
XmlSchemaClean()	8-8

## 9 Package SOAP for XML C APIs

XmlSoapAddBodyElement()	9-2
XmlSoapAddFaultReason()	9-3
XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail()	9-4

XmlSoapAddHeaderElement().....	9-4
XmlSoapCall() .....	9-5
XmlSoapCreateConnection().....	9-6
XmlSoapCreateCtx().....	9-7
XmlSoapCreateMsg() .....	9-8
XmlSoapDestroyConnection() .....	9-9
XmlSoapDestroyCtx() .....	9-9
XmlSoapDestroyMsg().....	9-10
XmlSoapError() .....	9-10
XmlSoapGetBody() .....	9-11
XmlSoapGetBodyElement() .....	9-11
XmlSoapGetEnvelope().....	9-12
XmlSoapGetFault() .....	9-13
XmlSoapGetHeader() .....	9-14
XmlSoapGetHeaderElement().....	9-14
XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand().....	9-15
XmlSoapGetReasonLang().....	9-16
XmlSoapGetReasonNum() .....	9-16
XmlSoapGetRelay() .....	9-17
XmlSoapGetRole() .....	9-17
XmlSoapHasFault() .....	9-18
XmlSoapSetFault() .....	9-19
XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand().....	9-20
XmlSoapSetRelay() .....	9-20
XmlSoapSetRole() .....	9-21

## 10 Package Traversal for XML C APIs

DocumentTraversal Interface for Traversal XML C APIs.....	10-1
XmlDomCreateNodeIter() .....	10-1
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker().....	10-2
NodeFilter Interface for Traversal XML C APIs.....	10-3
XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F().....	10-3
NodeIterator Interface for Traversal XML C APIs.....	10-4
XmlDomIterDetach() .....	10-4
XmlDomIterNextNode() .....	10-5
XmlDomIterPrevNode().....	10-5
TreeWalker Interface for Traversal XML C APIs.....	10-6
XmlDomWalkerFirstChild() .....	10-7
XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode() .....	10-7
XmlDomWalkerGetRoot().....	10-8
XmlDomWalkerLastChild().....	10-8
XmlDomWalkerNextNode().....	10-9
XmlDomWalkerNextSibling() .....	10-9

XmlDomWalkerParentNode().....	10-10
XmlDomWalkerPrevNode().....	10-11
XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling().....	10-11
XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode().....	10-12
XmlDomWalkerSetRoot().....	10-13

## 11 Package XML for XML C APIs

XmlAccess().....	11-2
XmlCreate().....	11-3
XmlCreateDTD().....	11-5
XmlCreateDocument().....	11-6
XmlDestroy().....	11-6
XmlDiff().....	11-7
XmlFreeDocument().....	11-8
XmlGetEncoding().....	11-9
XmlHasFeature().....	11-9
XmlIsSimple().....	11-10
XmlIsUnicode().....	11-10
XmlLoadDom().....	11-11
XmlLoadSax().....	11-12
XmlLoadSaxVA().....	11-13
XmlSaveDom().....	11-14
XmlVersion().....	11-15

## 12 Package XmlDiff for XML C APIs

XmlDiff().....	12-1
XmlHash().....	12-3
XmlPatch().....	12-4

## 13 Package XPath for XML C APIs

XmlXPathCreateCtx().....	13-1
XmlXPathDestroyCtx().....	13-2
XmlXPathEval().....	13-2
XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean().....	13-3
XmlXPathGetObjectFragment().....	13-3
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode().....	13-4
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum().....	13-4
XmlXPathGetObjectNumber().....	13-5
XmlXPathGetObjectString().....	13-5
XmlXPathGetObjectType().....	13-6
XmlXPathParse().....	13-6

## 14 Package XPointer for XML C APIs

XPointer Interface for XPointer XML C APIs .....	14-1
XmlXPointerEval() .....	14-1
XPtrLoc Interface for XPointer XML C APIs .....	14-2
XmlXPtrLocGetNode() .....	14-2
XmlXPtrLocGetPoint() .....	14-2
XmlXPtrLocGetRange() .....	14-3
XmlXPtrLocGetType() .....	14-3
XmlXPtrLocToString() .....	14-3
XPtrLocSet Interface for XPointer XML C APIs .....	14-4
XmlXPtrLocSetFree() .....	14-4
XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem() .....	14-4
XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength() .....	14-5

## 15 Package XSLT for XML C APIs

XmlXslCreate() .....	15-1
XmlXslDestroy() .....	15-2
XmlXslGetBaseURI() .....	15-2
XmlXslGetOutput() .....	15-3
XmlXslGetStylesheetDom() .....	15-3
XmlXslGetTextParam() .....	15-3
XmlXslProcess() .....	15-4
XmlXslResetAllParams() .....	15-4
XmlXslSetOutputDom() .....	15-5
XmlXslSetOutputEncoding() .....	15-5
XmlXslSetOutputMethod() .....	15-5
XmlXslSetOutputSax() .....	15-6
XmlXslSetOutputStream() .....	15-6
XmlXslSetTextParam() .....	15-7

## 16 Package XSLTVM for XML C APIs

XSLTC Interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs .....	16-1
XmlXvmCompileBuffer() .....	16-1
XmlXvmCompileDom() .....	16-2
XmlXvmCompileFile() .....	16-2
XmlXvmCompileURI() .....	16-3
XmlXvmCompileXPath() .....	16-4
XmlXvmCreateComp() .....	16-5
XmlXvmDestroyComp() .....	16-5
XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength() .....	16-5
XSLTVM Interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs .....	16-6
XMLXVM_DEBUG_F() .....	16-7

XmlXvmCreate()	16-8
XmlXvmDestroy()	16-8
XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()	16-9
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()	16-9
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()	16-10
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()	16-10
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()	16-11
XmlXvmGetObjectString()	16-11
XmlXvmGetObjectType()	16-12
XmlXvmGetOutputDom()	16-12
XmlXvmResetParams()	16-13
XmlXvmSetBaseURI()	16-13
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()	16-14
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()	16-14
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()	16-15
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()	16-15
XmlXvmSetOutputDom()	16-16
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()	16-16
XmlXvmSetOutputSax()	16-17
XmlXvmSetOutputStream()	16-17
XmlXvmSetTextParam()	16-18
XmlXvmTransformBuffer()	16-18
XmlXvmTransformDom()	16-19
XmlXvmTransformFile()	16-20
XmlXvmTransformURI()	16-20

## A Mapping of APIs used before Oracle Database 10g Release 1

C Package Changes	A-1
Initializing and Parsing Sequence Changes	A-1
Datatype Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages	A-3
Method Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages	A-5

## Index





## List of Tables

1-1	Summary of Datatypes for XML C Implementation.....	1-1
2-1	Summary of Callback Methods for XML C Implementation.....	2-1
3-1	Summary of Attr DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-1
3-2	Summary of CharacterData DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-12
3-3	Summary of Document DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-18
3-4	Summary of DocumentType DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-39
3-5	Summary of Element DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-43
3-6	Summary of Entity DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-56
3-7	Summary of NamedNodeMap DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-58
3-8	Summary of Node DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-64
3-9	Summary of NodeList DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-98
3-10	Summary of NodeList DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-100
3-11	Summary of ProcessingInstruction DOM Package Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-102
3-12	Summary of Text DOM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	3-104
4-1	Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation.....	4-1
5-1	Orastream Error Codes for XML C Implementation.....	5-1
5-2	Summary of OraStream Methods for XML C Implementation.....	5-1
6-1	Summary of Range Methods for XML C Implementation.....	6-1
7-1	Summary of SAX Methods for XML C Implementation.....	7-1
8-1	Summary of Schema Methods for XML C Implementation.....	8-1
9-1	Summary of SOAP Methods for XML C Implementation.....	9-1
10-1	Summary of DocumentTraversal Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation.....	10-1
10-2	Summary of NodeFilter Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation.....	10-3
10-3	Summary of NodeIterator Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation.....	10-4
10-4	Summary of TreeWalker Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation.....	10-6
11-1	Summary of XML Methods for XML C Implementation.....	11-1
12-1	Summary of XmlDiff Methods for XML C Implementation.....	12-1
13-1	Summary of XPath Methods for XML C Implementation.....	13-1
14-1	Summary of XPointer XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation.....	14-1
14-2	Summary of XPtrLoc XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation.....	14-2
14-3	Summary of XPtrLocSet XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation.....	14-4
15-1	Summary of XSLT Methods for XML C Implementation.....	15-1
16-1	Summary of XSLTC XSLTVM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	16-1
16-2	Summary of XSLTVM XSLTVM Methods for XML C Implementation.....	16-6
A-1	Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package.....	A-3
A-2	Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package.....	A-5



---

# Preface

The *Oracle Database XML C API Reference* describes Oracle XML Developer's Kits (XDK) and Oracle XML DB APIs for the C programming language. It primarily lists the syntax of functions, methods, and procedures associated with these APIs.

## Audience

*Oracle Database XML C API Reference* is intended for developers who are building XML applications in Oracle.

To use this document, you need a basic understanding of object-oriented programming concepts, familiarity with Structured Query Language (SQL), and working knowledge of application development using the C programming language.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2.0.1) documentation set:

- *Oracle Database Concepts*
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Object-Relational Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database New Features Guide*
- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Sample Schemas*

Additional information may be found at <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database-features/xdk/overview/index.html>

## Conventions

Oracle documentation uses font conventions to specify information type.

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

# Datatypes for XML C APIs

The following table lists all C datatypes and their descriptions.

**Table 1-1 Summary of Datatypes for XML C Implementation**

Datatype	Purpose
<a href="#">oracheck</a>	Checkword for validating data structures.
<a href="#">oraerr</a>	Error code: 0 is success, non-0 is failure.
<a href="#">oraprop_id</a>	The id of property; if $\geq 0$ it is valid, if $< 0$ , it is invalid.
<a href="#">oramemctx</a>	Opaque memory context.
<a href="#">oraprop</a>	Property name.
<a href="#">oraprop_t</a>	Property value type.
<a href="#">oraprop_v</a>	Value: union of storage for all data types.
<a href="#">orastream</a>	Opaque stream object.
<a href="#">orastreamhdl</a>	Storage for file handles.
<a href="#">xmlcmphow</a>	Constant used for DOM Range comparisons.
<a href="#">xmlctx</a>	Context shared for all documents in an XML session.
<a href="#">xmldfsrct</a>	Specifies input types for <code>XmlDiff</code> operations
<a href="#">xmlerr</a>	Numeric error code returned by many functions.
<a href="#">xmlvctx</a>	XML Event context.
<a href="#">xmlhasht</a>	The hash value of an XML tree or sub-tree; also known as a digest.
<a href="#">xmlistream</a>	Generic user-defined input stream.
<a href="#">xmliter</a>	Control structure for <code>DOM2 NodeIterator</code> and <code>TreeWalker</code> .
<a href="#">xmlnodetype</a>	The numeric type code of a node.
<a href="#">xmlostream</a>	Generic user-defined output stream.
<a href="#">xmlpoint</a>	XPointer point location.
<a href="#">xmlrange</a>	Controls structure for <code>DOM2 Range</code> .
<a href="#">xmlsoapbind</a>	Binding for SOAP connections.

**Table 1-1 (Cont.) Summary of Datatypes for XML C Implementation**

Datatype	Purpose
<a href="#">xmlsoapcon</a>	SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">xmlsoapctx</a>	Context for SOAP operations.
<a href="#">xmlsoaprole</a>	Role for a SOAP node.
<a href="#">xmlshowbits</a>	Bit flags used to select which node types to show.
<a href="#">xmlurlacc</a>	This is an enumeration of the known access methods for retrieving data from a URL.
<a href="#">xmlurlhdl</a>	This union contains the handle(s) needed to access URL data, be it a stream or <code>stdio</code> pointer, file descriptor(s), and so on.
<a href="#">xmlurlpart</a>	This structure contains the sub-parts of a URL.
<a href="#">xmlxptrloc</a>	XPointer location datatype.
<a href="#">xmlxptrlocset</a>	XPointer location set datatype.
<a href="#">xmlxslobjtype</a>	Type of XSLT object that may be returned.
<a href="#">xmlxslomethod</a>	Type of output produced by the XSLT processor.
<a href="#">xmlxvm</a>	An object of type <code>xmlxvm</code> is used for XML document transformation.
<a href="#">xmlxvmcomp</a>	An object of type <code>xmlxvmcomp</code> is used for compiling XSL stylesheets.
<a href="#">xmlxvmflags</a>	Control flags for the XSLT compiler.
<a href="#">xmlxvmobjtype</a>	Type of XSLTVM object.
<a href="#">xpctx</a>	XPath top-level context.
<a href="#">xpexpr</a>	XPath expression.
<a href="#">xpobj</a>	XPath object.
<a href="#">xsdctx</a>	XMLSchema validator context.
<a href="#">xslctx</a>	XSL top-level context.
<a href="#">xvmobj</a>	XSLVM processor run-time object; contents are private and must not be accessed by users.

## oracheck

Keyword for validating data structures.

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 oracheck;
```

## oraerr

Error code: 0 is success, non-0 is failure.

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 oraerr;
```

## oraprop\_id

The id of property; if  $\geq 0$  it is valid, if  $< 0$ , it is invalid.

### Definition

```
typedef sb2 oraprop_id;
```

## oramemctx

Opaque memory context.

### Definition

```
typedef struct oramemctx oramemctx;
```

## oraprop

Property name.

### Definition

```
typedef struct oraprop {
    oratext    *name_oraprop;
    oraprop_id id_oraprop;
    oraprop_t  type_oraprop;
    oraprop_v  value_oraprop;
} oraprop;
```

## oraprop\_t

Property value type.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {
    ORAPROP_TYPE_BOOLEAN,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_SIGNED,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_UNSIGNED,
    ORAPROP_TYPE_POINTER
} oraprop_t;
```

## oraprop\_v

Value: union of storage for all data types.

**Definition**

```
typedef union oraprop_v {
    boolean b_oraprop_v;
    sb4     s_oraprop_v;
    ub4     u_oraprop_v;
    void    *p_oraprop_v;
} oraprop_v;
```

## orastream

Opaque stream object.

**Definition**

```
typedef struct orastream orastream;
```

## orastreamhdl

Storage for file handles.

**Definition**

```
typedef union orastreamhdl {
    void *ptr_orastreamhdl; /* generic pointer stream/file/etc */
    struct {
        sb4 fd_orastreamhdl; /* file descriptor(s) [FTP needs all 3!] */
        sb4 fd2_orastreamhdl;
        sb4 fd3_orastreamhdl;
    } fds_lpihdl;
} orastreamhdl;
```

## xmlcmphow

Constant used for DOM Range comparisons.

**Definition**

```
typedef enum {
    XMLDOM_START_TO_START ,
    XMLDOM_START_TO_END   ,
    XMLDOM_END_TO_END     ,
    XMLDOM_END_TO_START
} xmlcmphow;
```

## xmlctx

Context shared for all documents in an XML session. Contains encoding information, low-level memory allocation function pointers, error message language or encoding and optional handler function, and so on. Required to load (parse) documents and create DOM, generate SAX, and so on.

**Definition**

```
struct xmlctx;
typedef struct xmlctx xmlctx;
```



## xmldfoftype

Operation type, represents one or more operations. Used for passing the diff to a custom Operation Builder (OB) in `XmlDiff(XmlDiff())`.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {
    XMLDF_OP_NONE, /* Should not be set to non-zero for XMLDF_NUM_OP macro below */
    XMLDF_OP_UPDATE,
    XMLDF_OP_RENAME,
    XMLDF_OP_DELETE,
    XMLDF_OP_INSERT_BEFORE,
    XMLDF_OP_APPEND
} xmldfoftype;
```

## xmldfsrct

Specifies input types for `XmlDiff` operations.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {
    XMLDF_SRCT_NONE, /* default is DOM */
    XMLDF_SRCT_DOM, /* DOM: doc node must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_FILE, /* file name must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_URL, /* URL in compiler encoding */
    XMLDF_SRCT_BUFFER, /* buffer: buffer pointer and length must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_FILEP, /* FILE */
    XMLDF_SRCT_OSTREAM, /* orastream: stream pointer must be specified */
    XMLDF_SRCT_DOMNODE /* DOM node, used with XmlHash() */
} xmldfsrct;
```

## xmlerr

Numeric error code returned by many functions. A zero value indicates success; a nonzero value indicates error.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {
    XMLERR_OK, /* success return */
    XMLERR_NULL_PTR, /* NULL pointer */
    XMLERR_NO_MEMORY, /* out of memory */
    XMLERR_HASH_DUP, /* duplicate entry in hash table */
    XMLERR_INTERNAL, /* internal error */
    XMLERR_BUFFER_OVERFLOW, /* name/quoted string too long */
    XMLERR_BAD_CHILD, /* invalid child for parent */
    XMLERR_EOI, /* unexpected EndOfInformation */
    XMLERR_BAD_MEMCB, /* invalid memory callbacks */
    XMLERR_UNICODE_ALIGN, /* Unicode data misalignment */
    XMLERR_NODE_TYPE, /* wrong node type */
    XMLERR_UNCLEAN, /* context is not clean */
    XMLERR_NESTED_STRINGS, /* internal: nested open str */
    XMLERR_PROP_NOT_FOUND, /* property not found */
    XMLERR_SAVE_OVERFLOW, /* save output overflowed */
    XMLERR_NOT_IMP, /* feature not implemented */
    XMLERR-NLS_MISMATCH, /* specify lxglo/lxd or neither*/
}
```

```
XMLERR-NLS_INIT      , /* error at NLS initialization */
XMLERR-LEH_INIT      , /* error at LEH initialization */
XMLERR-LML_INIT      , /* error at LML initialization */
XMLERR-LPU_INIT      , /* error at LPU initialization */
} xmlerr;
```

## xmlvctx

XML Event context.

### Definition

```
typedef struct {
    void *ctx_xmlvctx;      /* implementation specific context */
    xmlvdisp disp_xmlvctx; /* dispatch table */
    ub4 checkword_xmlvctx; /* checkword for integrity check */
    ub4 flags_xmlvctx;     /* mode; default: expand_entity */
    struct xmlvctx;        /* input xmlvctx; chains the XML Event context */
} xmlvctx;
```

## xmlvtype

The event type for parser pull events.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlvtype {
    XML_EVENT_FATAL_ERROR,      /* Fatal Error */
    XML_EVENT_BEFORE_START,     /* Before Start Document */
    XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT,   /* Indicates Start Document */
    XML_EVENT_START_DTD,        /* Start DTD */
    XML_EVENT_END_DTD,          /* End DTD */
    XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION, /* Notation Decl */
    XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION,   /* PE Decl */
    XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION,   /* US Decl */
    XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION, /* Element Decl */
    XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION, /* Attribute Decl */
    XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT,    /* Start Element */
    XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT,      /* End Element */
    XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS,       /* Characters (text) */
    XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT,  /* Characters Continued */
    XML_EVENT_PI,               /* Processing Instruction */
    XML_EVENT_PI_CONT,          /* Processing Instruction Continued */
    XML_EVENT_COMMENT,          /* Comment */
    XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT,     /* Comment Continued */
    XML_EVENT_SPACE,            /* White Space */
    XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT,       /* White Space Continued */
    XML_EVENT_ENTITY_REFERENCE, /* Entity Reference */
    XML_EVENT_CDATA,            /* CDATA */
    XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT,       /* CDATA continued */
    XML_EVENT_START_ENTITY,     /* Start Entity */
    XML_EVENT_END_ENTITY,       /* End Entity */
    XML_EVENT_END_DOCUMENT,     /* End Document */
    XML_EVENT_ERROR              /* Error */
}xmlvtype;
```

## xmlhasht

The hash value of an XML tree or sub-tree; also known as a digest.

If the hash values for two XML trees are equal, the trees are considered equal, to a very high probability; uses the MD5 algorithm.

### Definition

```
struct xmlhasht {
    ub4 l_xmlhasht; /* length of digest in bytes */
    ub1 d_xmlhasht[XMLDF_DIGEST_MAX]; /* the digest */
};
typedef struct xmlhasht xmlhasht;
```

## xmlstream

Generic user-defined input stream. The three function pointers are required (but may be stubs). The context pointer is entirely user-defined; point it to whatever state information is required to manage the stream; it will be passed as first argument to the user functions.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlstream {
    XML_STREAM_OPEN_F(
        (*open_xmlstream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        parts,
        length);
    XML_STREAM_READ_F(
        (*read_xmlstream),
        xctx,
        sctx,
        path,
        dest,
        size,
        nraw, eoi);
    XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F(
        (*close_xmlstream),
        xctx,
        sctx);
    void *ctx_xmlstream; /* user's stream context */
} xmlstream;
```

## xmliter

Control structure for DOM 2 NodeIterator and TreeWalker.

### Definition

```
struct xmliter {
    xmlnode *root_xmliter; /* root node of the iteration space */
    xmlnode *cur_xmliter; /* current position iterator ref node */
    ub4 show_xmliter; /* node filter mask */
    void *filt_xmliter; /* node filter function */
    boolean attach_xmliter; /* is iterator valid? */
    boolean expan_xmliter; /* are external entities expanded? */
    boolean before_xmliter; /* iter position before ref node? */
};
```

```
typedef struct xmliter xmliter;  
typedef struct xmliter xmlwalk;
```

## xmlnodetype

The numeric type code of a node. 0 means invalid, 1-13 are the standard numberings from DOM 1.0, and higher numbers are for internal use only.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {  
    XMLDOM_NONE      , /* bogus node */  
    XMLDOM_ELEM      , /* element */  
    XMLDOM_ATTR      , /* attribute */  
    XMLDOM_TEXT      , /* char data not escaped by CDATA */  
    XMLDOM_CDATA     , /* char data escaped by CDATA */  
    XMLDOM_ENTREF    , /* entity reference */  
    XMLDOM_ENTITY    , /* entity */  
    XMLDOM_PI        , /* <?processing instructions?> */  
    XMLDOM_COMMENT   , /* <!-- Comments --> */  
    XMLDOM_DOC       , /* Document */  
    XMLDOM_DTD       , /* DTD */  
    XMLDOM_FRAG     , /* Document fragment */  
    XMLDOM_NOTATION  , /* notation */  
  
    /* Oracle extensions from here on */  
    XMLDOM_ELEMDECL , /* DTD element declaration */  
    XMLDOM_ATTRDECL , /* DTD attribute declaration */  
  
    /* Content Particles (nodes in element's Content Model) */  
    XMLDOM_CPELEM   , /* element */  
    XMLDOM_CPCHOICE , /* choice (a|b) */  
    XMLDOM_CPSEQ    , /* sequence (a,b) */  
    XMLDOM_CPPCDATA , /* #PCDATA */  
    XMLDOM_CPSTAR   , /* '*' (zero or more) */  
    XMLDOM_CPPLUS   , /* '+' (one or more) */  
    XMLDOM_CPOPT    , /* '?' (optional) */  
    XMLDOM_CPEND    , /* end marker */  
} xmlnodetype;
```

## xmlostream

Generic user-defined output stream. The three function pointers are required (but may be stubs). The context pointer is entirely user-defined; point it to whatever state information is required to manage the stream; it will be passed as first argument to the user functions.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlostream {  
    XML_STREAM_OPEN_F(  
        (*open_xmlostream),  
        xctx,  
        sctx,  
        path,  
        parts,  
        length);  
    XML_STREAM_WRITE_F(  
        (*write_xmlostream),
```

```

    xctx,
    sctx,
    path,
    src,
    size);
XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F(
    (*close_xmlostream),
    xctx,
    sctx);
void *ctx_xmlostream;      /* user's stream context */
} xmlostream;

```

## xmlpoint

XPointer point location.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlpoint xmlpoint;
```

## xmlrange

Control structure for DOM 2 Range.

### Definition

```

typedef struct xmlrange {
    xmlnode *startnode_xmlrange; /* start point container */
    ub4     startofst_xmlrange; /* start point index */
    xmlnode *endnode_xmlrange; /* end point container */
    ub4     endofst_xmlrange; /* end point index */
    xmlnode *doc_xmlrange; /* document node */
    xmlnode *root_xmlrange; /* root node of the range */
    boolean collapsed_xmlrange; /* is range collapsed? */
    boolean detached_xmlrange; /* range invalid, invalidated? */
} xmlrange;

```

## xmlsoapbind

Binding for SOAP connections. SOAP does not dictate the binding (transport) used for conveying messages; however the HTTP protocol is well-defined and currently the only choice.

### Definition

```

typedef enum xmlsoapbind {
    XMLSOAP_BIND_NONE , /* none */
    XMLSOAP_BIND_HTTP /* HTTP */ } xmlsoapbind;

```

## xmlsoapcon

SOAP connection object. Each distinct connection requires an instance of this type, which contains binding and endpoint information.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlsoapcon xmlsoapcon;
```

## xmlsoapctx

Context for SOAP operations. Only a single context is needed and it can be shared by several SOAP messages.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlsoapctx xmlsoapctx;
```

## xmlsoaprole

Role for a SOAP node.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlsoaprole {
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_UNSET, /* not specified */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_NONE, /* "none" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_NEXT, /* "next" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_ULT, /* "ultimateReceiver" */
    XMLSOAP_ROLE_OTHER /* other - user defined */
} xmlsoaprole;
```

## xmlshowbits

Bit flags used to select which nodes types to show.

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 xmlshowbits;
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ALL ~(\ub4)0
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(ntype) ((\ub4)1 << (ntype))
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ELEM XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ELEM)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ATTR XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ATTR)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_TEXT XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_TEXT)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_CDATA XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_CDATA)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ENTREF XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ENTREF)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_ENTITY XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_ENTITY)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_PI XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_PI)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_COMMENT XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_COMMENT)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DOC XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DOC)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DTD XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DTD)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_FRAG XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_FRAG)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_NOTATION XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_NOTATION)
#define XMLDOM_SHOW_DOC_TYPE XMLDOM_SHOW_BIT(XMLDOM_DOC_TYPE)
```

## xmlurlacc

This is an enumeration of the known access methods for retrieving data from a URL. Open/read/close functions may be plugged in to override the default behavior.

### Definition

```
typedef enum {
    XML_ACCESS_NONE, /* not specified */
    XML_ACCESS_UNKNOWN, /* specified but unknown */
    XML_ACCESS_FILE, /* filesystem access */
}
```

```

XML_ACCESS_HTTP      , /* HTTP */
XML_ACCESS_FTP       , /* FTP */
XML_ACCESS_GOPHER    , /* Gopher */
XML_ACCESS_ORADB     , /* Oracle DB */
XML_ACCESS_STREAM    /* user-defined stream */
} xmlurlacc;

```

## xmlurlhdl

This union contains the handle(s) needed to access URL data, be it a stream or stdio pointer, file descriptor(s), and so on.

### Definition

```

typedef union xmlurlhdl {
    void *ptr_xmlurlhdl; /* generic stream/file/... handle */
    struct {
        sb4 fd1_xmlurlhdl; /* file descriptor(s) [FTP needs all 3!] */
        sb4 fd2_xmlurlhdl;
        sb4 fd3_xmlurlhdl;
    } fds_lpihdl;
} xmlurlhdl;

```

## xmlurlpart

This structure contains the sub-parts of a URL. The original URL is parsed and the pieces copied (NULL-terminated) to a working buffer, then this structure is filled in to point to the parts. Given URL `http://user:pwd@baz.com:8080/pub/baz.html;quux=1?huh#fraggy`, the example component part from this URL will be shown.

### Definition

```

typedef struct xmlurlpart {
    xmlurlacc access_xmlurlpart; /* access method code, XMLACCESS_HTTP */
    oratext *accbuf_xmlurlpart; /* access method name: "http" */
    oratext *host_xmlurlpart; /* hostname: "baz.com" */
    oratext *dir_xmlurlpart; /* directory: "pub" */
    oratext *file_xmlurlpart; /* filename: "baz.html" */
    oratext *uid_xmlurlpart; /* userid/username: "user" */
    oratext *passwd_xmlurlpart; /* password: "pwd" */
    oratext *port_xmlurlpart; /* port (as string): "8080" */
    oratext *frag_xmlurlpart; /* fragment: "fraggy" */
    oratext *query_xmlurlpart; /* query: "huh" */
    oratext *param_xmlurlpart; /* parameter: "quux=1" */
    ub2 portnum_xmlurlpart; /* port (as number): 8080 */
    ub1 abs_xmlurlpart; /* absolute path? TRUE */
} xmlurlpart;

```

## xmlxptrloc

XPointer location data type.

### Definition

```

typedef struct xmlxptrloc xmlxptrloc;

```

## xmlptrlocset

XPointer location set data type.

### Definition

```
typedef struct xmlptrlocset xmlptrlocset;
```

## xmlxslobjtype

Type of XSLT object that may be returned.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlxslobjtype {
    XMLXSL_TYPE_UNKNOWN , /* Not a defined type */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_NDSET   , /* Node-set */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_BOOL    , /* Boolean value */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_NUM     , /* Numeric value (double) */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_STR     , /* String */
    XMLXSL_TYPE_FRAG    , /* Document Fragment */
} xmlxslobjtype;
```

## xmlxslomethod

Type of output to be produced by the XSLT processor.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlxslomethod {
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_UNKNOWN , /* Not defined */
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_XML     , /* Produce a Document Fragment */
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_STREAM  , /* Stream out formatted result */
    XMLXSL_OUTPUT_HTML    , /* Stream out HTML formatted result */
} xmlxslomethod;
```

## xmlxvm

An object of type `xmlxvm` is used for XML documents transformation. The contents of `xmlxvm` are private and must not be accessed by users.

### Definition

```
struct xmlxvm;
typedef struct xmlxvm xmlxvm;
```

## xmlxvmcomp

An object of type `xmlxvmcomp` is used for compiling XSL stylesheets. The contents of `xmlxvmcomp` are private and must not be accessed by users.

### Definition

```
struct xmlxvmcomp;
typedef struct xmlxvmcomp xmlxvmcomp;
```



## xmlxvmflags

Control flags for the XSLT compiler.

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to insert debug information into the bytecode.
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE forces the same behavior as `xsl:strip-space elements=""`

### Definition

```
typedef ub4 xmlxvmflag;
#define XMLXVM_NOFLAG
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG /* insert debug info into bytecode */
#define XMLXVM_STRIPSPACE /* same as xsl:strip-space elements="" */
```

## xmlxvmobjtype

Type of XSLTVM object.

### Definition

```
typedef enum xmlxvmobjtype {
    XMLXVM_TYPE_UNKNOWN ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_NDSET ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_BOOL ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_NUM ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_STR ,
    XMLXVM_TYPE_FRAG
} xmlxvmobjtype;
```

## xpctx

XPath top-level context.

### Definition

```
struct xpctx;
typedef struct xpctx xpctx;
```

## xpexpr

XPath expression.

### Definition

```
struct xpexpr;
typedef struct xpexpr xpexpr;
```

## xpobj

Xpath object.

### Definition

```
struct xpobj; typedef struct xpobj xpobj;
```

## xsdctx

XML Schema validator context, created by `XmlSchemaCreate` and passed to most Schema functions.

### Definition

```
# define XSDCTX_DEFINED
struct xsdctx; typedef struct xsdctx xsdctx;
```

## xslctx

XSL top-level context.

### Definition

```
struct xslctx;
typedef struct xslctx xslctx;
```

## xvmobj

XSLVM processor run-time object; content is private and must not be accessed by users.

### Definition

```
struct xvmobj;
typedef struct xvmobj xvmobj;
```

---

## Package Callback for XML C APIs

The Callback package defines macros that declare functions (or function pointers) for XML callbacks. Callbacks are used for error-message handling, memory allocation and freeing, and stream operations.

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Callback interface.

**Table 2-1 Summary of Callback Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F()</a>	User-defined access method close callback.
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F()</a>	User-defined access method open callback.
<a href="#">XML_ACCESS_READ_F()</a>	User-defined access method read callback.
<a href="#">XML_ALLOC_F()</a>	Low-level memory allocation.
<a href="#">XML_ERRMSG_F()</a>	Handles error message.
<a href="#">XML_FREE_F()</a>	Low-level memory freeing.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_CLOSE_F()</a>	User-defined stream close callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_OPEN_F()</a>	User-defined stream open callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_READ_F()</a>	User-defined stream read callback.
<a href="#">XML_STREAM_WRITE_F()</a>	User-defined stream write callback.

### **XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the close function callback used to access a URL.

### **XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the open function callback used to access a URL.

### **XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the read function callback used to access a URL.

### **XML\_ALLOC\_F()**

This macro defines a prototype for the low-level memory `alloc` function provided by the user. If no allocator is provided, `malloc` is used. Memory should not be zeroed by this function. Matches [XML\\_FREE\\_F\(\)](#).

## XML\_ERRMSG\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the error message handling function. If no error message callback is provided at XML initialization time, errors will be printed to `stderr`. If a handler is provided, it will be invoked instead of printing to `stderr`.

## XML\_FREE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the low-level memory free function provided by the user. If no allocator is provided, `free()` is used. Matches [XML\\_ALLOC\\_F\(\)](#).

## XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the close function callback, called to close an open source and free its resources.

## XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the open function callback, which is called once to open the input source. This function should return `XMLERR_OK` on success.

## XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the read function callback, called to read data from an open source into a buffer, returning the number of bytes read (< 0 on error). The `eoi` flag determines if this is the final block of data.

On EOI, the close function will be called automatically.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_READ_F(func, xctx, sctx, path, dest, size, nraw, eoi)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *dest,
    size_t size,
    sbig_ora *nraw,
    boolean *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>sctx</code>	IN	user-defined stream context
<code>path</code>	IN	full URI of the open source (for error messages)
<code>dest</code>	(OUT)	destination buffer to read data into

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
size	IN	size of destination buffer
nraw	(OUT)	number of bytes read
eoi	(OUT)	signal to end of information; last chunk

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

---



---

#### See Also:

[XML\\_STREAM\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#),  
[XML\\_STREAM\\_WRITE\\_F\(\)](#)

---



---

## XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F()

This macro defines a prototype for the write function callback, called to write data to a user-defined stream.

### Syntax

```
#define XML_STREAM_WRITE_F(func, xctx, sctx, path, src, size)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    void *sctx,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *src,
    size_t size);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	user-defined stream context
path	IN	full URI of the open source (for error messages)
src	IN	source buffer to read data from
size	IN	size of source in bytes

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XML\\_STREAM\\_OPEN\\_F\(\)](#), [XML\\_STREAM\\_CLOSE\\_F\(\)](#),  
[XML\\_STREAM\\_READ\\_F\(\)](#)

---

---

## Package DOM for XML C APIs

This implementation follows REC-DOM-Level-1-19981001. Because the DOM standard is object-oriented, some changes were made for C language adaptation.

- Reused function names have to be expanded; `getValue` in the `Attr` interface has the unique name `XmlDomGetAttrValue` that matches the pattern established by DOM 2's `getNodeValue`.
- Functions were added to extend the DOM beyond the standard; one example is `XmlDomNumChildNodes`, which returns the number of children of a node.

Note that if the `data_encoding` parameter is set to UTF-16, the APIs process wide-CHAR arrays, not `oratext` byte arrays.

### Attr Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `Attr` interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-1 Summary of Attr DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<code>XmlDomGetAttrLocal()</code>	Returns an attribute's namespace local name as NULL-terminated string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()</code>	Returns an attribute's namespace local name as length-encoded string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrName()</code>	Return attribute's name as NULL-terminated string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrNameLen()</code>	Return attribute's name as length-encoded string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()</code>	Returns an attribute's namespace prefix.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()</code>	Return flag that indicates whether an attribute was explicitly created.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrURI()</code>	Returns an attribute's namespace URI as NULL-terminated string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrURILen()</code>	Returns an attribute's namespace URI as length-encoded string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrValue()</code>	Return attribute's value as NULL-terminated string.
<code>XmlDomGetAttrValueLen()</code>	Return attribute's value as length-encoded string.

**Table 3-1 (Cont.) Summary of Attr DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrValueStream()</a>	Get attribute value stream-style,i.e.chunked.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetOwnerElem()</a>	Return an attribute's "owning" element.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrValue()</a>	Set an attribute's value.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrValueStream()</a>	Sets an attribute value stream style (chunked).

## XmlDomGetAttrLocal()

Returns an attribute's namespace local name (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrURILen` which returns the local name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrLocal(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>attr</code>	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(`oratext *`) attribute's local name [data encoding]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()

Returns an attribute's namespace local name (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrLocal` which returns the local name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `GetXXX` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.



If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `bufLen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>attr</code>	IN	attribute node
<code>buf</code>	IN	input buffer; optional
<code>buflen</code>	IN	input buffer length; optional
<code>len</code>	OUT	length of local name, in characters

### Returns

(`oratext *`) Attr's local name [data encoding]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetAttrName()

Returns the fully-qualified name of an attribute (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string, for example `bar\0` or `foo:bar\0`.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrNameLen` which returns the attribute name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use XMLType backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrName(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of attribute [data encoding]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrNameLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrNameLen()**

Returns the fully-qualified name of an attribute (in the data encoding) as a length-encoded string, for example ("bar", 3) or ("foo:bar", 7).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrName` which returns the attribute name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLTYPE`, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `GetXXX()` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `bufLen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrNameLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 bufLen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional

Parameter	In/Out	Description
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of local name, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of attribute [data encoding]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()**

Returns an attribute's namespace prefix (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrPrefix(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's namespace prefix [data encoding] or NULL

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()**

Return the 'specified' flag for an attribute. If the attribute was explicitly given a value in the original document, this is TRUE; otherwise, it is FALSE. If the node is not an attribute, returns FALSE. If the user sets an attribute's value through DOM, its specified flag will be TRUE. To return an attribute to its default value (if it has one), the

attribute should be deleted; it will then be re-created automatically with the default value (and specified will be `FALSE`).

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlDomGetAttrSpecified(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(boolean) attribute's "specified" flag

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetAttrURI()

Returns an attribute's namespace URI (in the data encoding). If the attribute's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be `NULL`).

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrURILen` which returns the URI as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrURI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(`oratext *`) attribute's namespace URI [data encoding] or `NULL`

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrURILen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrURILen()**

Returns an attribute's namespace URI (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. If the attribute's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrURI` which returns the URI as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `Get` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrURILen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>attr</code>	IN	attribute node
<code>buf</code>	IN	input buffer; optional
<code>buflen</code>	IN	input buffer length; optional
<code>len</code>	OUT	length of URI, in characters

**Returns**

(`oratext *`) attribute's namespace URI [data encoding] or NULL

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetAttrURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrPrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrLocal\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetAttrValue()

Returns the "value" (character data) of an attribute (in the data encoding) as NULL-terminated string. Character and general entities will have been replaced.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrValueLen` which returns the attribute value as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrValue(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

### Returns

(oratext \*) attribute's value

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetAttrValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetAttrValueLen()

Returns the "value" (character data) of an attribute (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. Character and general entities will have been replaced.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetAttrValue` which returns the attribute value as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the attribute's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `GetXXX()` functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetAttrValueLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlattrnode *attr,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of attribute's value, in characters

**Returns**

(oratext \*) attribute's value

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrValueStream()**

Returns the large "value" (associated character data) for an attribute and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetAttrValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *attr,
    xmlostream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
attr	IN	attribute node
ostream	IN	output stream object

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

## XmlDomGetOwnerElem()

Returns the `Element` node associated with an attribute. Each `attr` either belongs to an element (one and only one), or is detached and not yet part of the DOM tree. In the former case, the element node is returned; if the `attr` is unassigned, `NULL` is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlemnode* XmlDomGetOwnerElem(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlattrnode *attr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node

---

**Returns**

(xmlemnode \*) attribute's element node [or `NULL`]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetOwnerDocument\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomSetAttrValue()

Sets the given attribute's value to data. If the node is not an attribute, does nothing. Note that the new value must be in the data encoding! It is not verified, converted, or checked. The attribute's specified flag will be `TRUE` after setting a new value.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetAttrValue(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlattrnode *attr,  
    oratext *value);
```



Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
value	IN	new value of attribute; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrValue\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetAttrValueStream()**

Sets the large "value" (associated character data) for an attribute piecemeal from an input stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them efficiently as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetAttrValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *attr,
    xmlstream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
attr	IN	attribute node
istream	IN	input stream

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**CharacterData Interface for DOM XML C APIs**

The following table summarizes the methods available through the CharacterData interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-2 Summary of CharacterData DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomAppendData()</a>	Append data to end of node's current data.
<a href="#">XmlDomDeleteData()</a>	Remove part of node's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetCharData()</a>	Return data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetCharDataLength()</a>	Return length of data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomInsertData()</a>	Insert string into node's current data.
<a href="#">XmlDomReplaceData()</a>	Replace part of node's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetCharData()</a>	Set data for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSubstringData()</a>	Return substring of node's data.

## XmlDomAppendData()

Append a string to the end of a `CharacterData` node's data. If the node is not `Text`, `Comment` or `CDATA`, or if the string to append is `NULL`, does nothing. The appended data should be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomAppendData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *data,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	<code>CharacterData</code> node
<code>data</code>	IN	data to append; data encoding
<code>old</code>	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

**XmlDomDeleteData()**

Remove a range of characters from a `CharacterData` node's data. If the node is not text, comment or CDATA, or if the offset is outside of the original data, does nothing. The `offset` is zero-based, so offset zero refers to the start of the data. Both `offset` and `count` are in characters, not bytes. If the sum of offset and count exceeds the data length then all characters from `offset` to the end of the data are deleted.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomDeleteData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    ub4 count,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	<code>CharacterData</code> node
<code>offset</code>	IN	character offset where to start removing
<code>count</code>	IN	number of characters to delete
<code>old</code>	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetCharData()**

Returns the data for a `CharacterData` node (type text, comment or CDATA) in the data encoding. For other node types, or if there is no data, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetCharData(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment or CDATA

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) character data of node [data encoding]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateText\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateComment\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomCreateCDATA\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomGetCharDataLength()**

Returns the length of the data for a CharacterData node, type Text, Comment or CDATA) in characters, not bytes. For other node types, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomGetCharDataLength(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *cdata);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment or CDATA

---

**Returns**

(ub4) length in characters, not bytes, of node's data

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomInsertData()

Insert a string into a `CharacterData` node's data at the specified position. If the node is not `Text`, `Comment` or `CDATA`, or if the data to be inserted is `NULL`, or the offset is outside the original data, does nothing. The inserted data must be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked. The offset is specified as characters, not bytes. The offset is zero-based, so inserting at offset zero prepends the data.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it (which is why it's returned).

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomInsertData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    oratext *arg,
    oratext **old);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	<code>CharacterData</code> node; <code>Text</code> , <code>Comment</code> , or <code>CDATA</code>
offset	IN	character offset where to start inserting
arg	IN	data to insert
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

### See Also:

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

## XmlDomReplaceData()

Replaces a range of characters in a `CharacterData` node's data with a new string. If the node is not `Text`, `Comment` or `CDATA`, or if the offset is outside of the original data, or if the replacement string is `NULL`, does nothing. If the count is zero, acts just as `XmlDomInsertData`. The offset is zero-based, so offset zero refers to the start of the data. The replacement data must be in the data encoding. It will not be verified, converted, or checked. The offset and count are both in characters, not bytes. If the

sum of offset and count exceeds length, then all characters to the end of the data are replaced.

The new node data will be allocated and managed by DOM, but if the previous node value was allocated and managed by the user, they are responsible for freeing it, which is why it is returned.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomReplaceData(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    ub4 offset,  
    ub4 count,  
    oratext *arg,  
    oratext **old);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
offset	IN	character offset where to start replacing
count	IN	number of characters to replace
arg	IN	replacement substring; data encoding
old	OUT	previous data for node; data encoding

---

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomSetCharData()

Sets data for a CharacterData node (type text, comment or CDATA), replacing the old data. For other node types, does nothing. The new data is not verified, converted, or checked; it should be in the data encoding.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetCharData(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
data	IN	new data for node

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSubstringData()**

Returns a range of character data from a CharacterData node, type Text, Comment or CDATA. For other node types, or if count is zero, returns NULL. Since the data is in the data encoding, offset and count are in characters, not bytes. The beginning of the string is offset 0. If the sum of offset and count exceeds the length, then all characters to the end of the data are returned.

The substring is permanently allocated in the node's document's memory pool. To free the substring, use XmlDomFreeString.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomSubstringData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    ub4 offset,
    ub4 count);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	CharacterData node; Text, Comment, or CDATA
offset	IN	character offset where to start extraction of substring
count	IN	number of characters to extract

**Returns**

(oratext \*) specified substring.

**See Also:**

[XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSplitText\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeString\(\)](#)

---

## Document Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Document interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-3 Summary of Document DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateAttr()</a>	Create attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateAttrNS()</a>	Create attribute node with namespace information.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateCDATA()</a>	Create CDATA node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateComment()</a>	Create comment node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateElem()</a>	Create an element node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateElemNS()</a>	Create an element node with namespace information.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateEntityRef()</a>	Create entity reference node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateFragment()</a>	Create a document fragment.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreatePI()</a>	Create PI node.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateText()</a>	Create text node.
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeString()</a>	Frees a string allocate by <a href="#">XmlDomSubstringData()</a> , and others.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetBaseURI()</a>	Returns the base URI for a document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTD()</a>	Get DTD for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDecl()</a>	Returns a document's <code>XMLDecl</code> information.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElem()</a>	Get top-level element for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemByID()</a>	Get document element given ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()</a>	Obtain document elements.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()</a>	Obtain document elements (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetLastError()</a>	Return last error code for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetSchema()</a>	Returns URI of schema associated with document.
<a href="#">XmlDomImportNode()</a>	Import a node from another DOM.



**Table 3-3 (Cont.) Summary of Document DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomIsSchemaBased()</a>	Indicate whether a schema is associated with a document.
<a href="#">XmlDomSaveString()</a>	Saves a string permanently in a document's memory pool.
<a href="#">XmlDomSaveString2()</a>	Saves a Unicode string permanently in a document's memory pool.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetDTD()</a>	Sets DTD for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetDocOrder()</a>	Set document order for all nodes.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetLastError()</a>	Sets last error code for document.
<a href="#">XmlDomSync()</a>	Synchronizes the persistent version of a document with its DOM.

## XmlDomCreateAttr()

Creates an attribute node with the given name and value (in the data encoding). Note this function differs from the DOM specification, which does not allow the initial value of the attribute to be set (see [XmlDomSetAttrValue](#)). The name is required, but the value may be NULL; neither is verified, converted, or checked.

This is the non-namespace aware function (see [XmlDomCreateAttrNS](#)): the new attribute will have NULL namespace URI and prefix, and its local name will be the same as its name, even if the name specified is a qualified name.

If given an initial value, the attribute's specified flag will be TRUE.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with [XmlDomAppendChild](#), and so on.

See [XmlDomSetAttr](#) which creates and adds an attribute in a single operation.

The name and value are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomCreateAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

Parameter	In/Out	Description
name	IN	new node's name; data encoding; user control
value	IN	new node's value; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) new Attr node.

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCreateAttrNS()**

Creates an attribute node with the given namespace URI and qualified name; this is the namespace-aware version of `XmlDomCreateAttr`. Note this function differs from the DOM specification, which does not allow the initial value of the attribute to be set (see `XmlDomSetAttrValue`). The name is required, but the value may be `NULL`; neither is verified, converted, or checked.

If given an initial value, the attribute's specified flag will be `TRUE`.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild`, and so on. See `XmlDomSetAttr` which creates and adds an attribute in a single operation.

The URI, qualified name and value are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomCreateAttrNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	node's namespace URI; data encoding; user control

Parameter	In/Out	Description
qname	IN	node's qualified name; data encoding; user control
value	IN	new node's value; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) new Attr node.

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCreateCDATA()**

Creates a CDATASection node with the given initial data (which should be in the data encoding). A CDATASection is considered verbatim and is never parsed; it will not be joined with adjacent Text nodes by the normalize operation. The initial data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a CDATA node is always "#cdata-section".

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with XmlDomAppendChild and so on.

The CDATA is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlcdatanode* XmlDomCreateCDATA(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
data	IN	new node's CDATA; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlcdatanode \*) new CDATA node.

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomCreateText\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomCreateComment()

Creates a Comment node with the given initial data (which must be in the data encoding). The data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a Comment node is always "#comment".

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The comment data is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlcommentnode* XmlDomCreateComment(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    oratext *data);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
data	IN	new node's comment; data encoding; user control

---

### Returns

(xmlcommentnode \*) new Comment node.

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomCreateElem()

Creates an element node with the given tag name (which should be in the data encoding). Note that the tag name of an element is case sensitive. This is the non-namespace aware function: the new node will have NULL namespace URI and prefix, and its local name will be the same as its tag name, even if the tag name specified is a qualified name.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The tagname is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomCreateElem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
tagname	IN	new node's name; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) new Element node.

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCreateElemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCreateElemNS()**

Creates an element with the given namespace URI and qualified name. Note that element names are case sensitive, and the qualified name is required though the URI may be NULL. The qualified name will be split into prefix and local parts, retrievable with `XmlDomGetNodePrefix`, `XmlDomGetNodeLocal`, and so on; the `tagName` will be the full qualified name.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The URI and qualified name are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomCreateElemNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *qname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

Parameter	In/Out	Description
uri	IN	new node's namespace URI; data encoding, user control
qname	IN	new node's qualified name; data encoding; user control

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) new Element node.

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCreateElem\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomCreateEntityRef()

Creates an EntityReference node; the name (which should be in the data encoding) is the name of the entity to be referenced. The named entity does not have to exist. The name is not verified, converted, or checked.

EntityReference nodes are never generated by the parser; instead, entity references are expanded as encountered. On output, an entity reference node will turn into a "&name;" style reference.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with XmlDomAppendChild, and so on.

The entity reference name is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlentrefnode* XmlDomCreateEntityRef(  
    xmlctx *ctx,  
    xmlDocnode *doc,  
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
name	IN	name of referenced entity; data encoding; user control

---

**Returns**

(xmlentrefnode \*) new EntityReference node.

## XmlDomCreateFragment()

Creates an empty `DocumentFragment` node. A document fragment is treated specially when it is inserted into a DOM tree: the children of the fragment are inserted in order instead of the fragment node itself. After insertion, the fragment node will still exist, but have no children. See `XmlDomInsertBefore`, `XmlDomReplaceChild`, `XmlDomAppendChild`, and so on. The name of a fragment node is always `"#document-fragment"`.

### Syntax

```
xmlfragnode* XmlDomCreateFragment(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

### Returns

(`xmlfragnode *`) new empty `DocumentFragment` node

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomCreatePI()

Creates a `ProcessingInstruction` node with the given target and data (which should be in the data encoding). The data may be `NULL` initially, and may be changed later (with `XmlDomSetPIData`), but the target is required and cannot be changed. Note the target and data are not verified, converted, or checked. The name of a PI node is the same as the target.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The PI's target and data are not copied, their pointers are just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmlpinode* XmlDomCreatePI(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *target,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
target	IN	new node's target; data encoding; user control
data	IN	new node's data; data encoding; user control

---

### Returns

(xmlpinode \*) new PI node.

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomCreateText()

Creates a `Text` node with the given initial data (which must be non-NULL and in the data encoding). The data may be NULL; if provided, it is not verified, converted, checked, or parsed (entities will not be expanded). The name of a fragment node is always "#text". New data for a `Text` node can be set; see the `CharacterData` interface for editing methods.

The new node is an orphan with no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild` and so on.

The text data is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

### Syntax

```
xmltextnode* XmlDomCreateText(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    oratext *data);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node



Parameter	In/Out	Description
data	IN	new node's text; data encoding; user control

**Returns**

(xmltextnode \*) new Text node.

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCreateCDATA\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetCharDataLength\(\)](#), [XmlDomSubstringData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#), [XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#), [XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomFreeString()**

Frees the string allocated by `XmlDomSubstringData` or similar functions. Note that strings explicitly saved with `XmlDomSaveString` are not freeable individually.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomFreeString(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *str);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	document where the string belongs
str	IN	string to free

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSaveString\(\)](#), [XmlDomSaveString2\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetBaseURI()**

Returns the base URI for a document. Usually only documents that were loaded from a URI will automatically have a base URI; documents loaded from other sources (`stdin`, `buffer`, and so on) will not naturally have a base URI, but a base URI may have been set for them using `XmlDomSetBaseURI`, for the purposes of resolving relative URIs in inclusion.

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlDomGetBaseURI(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) document's base URI [or NULL]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetBaseURI\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDTD()

Returns the DTD node associated with current document; if there is no DTD, returns NULL. The DTD cannot be edited, but its children may be retrieved with `XmlDomGetChildNodes` as for other node types.

**Syntax**

```
xmldtdnode* XmlDomGetDTD(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

---

**Returns**

(xmldtdnode \*) DTD node for document [or NULL]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlCreateDTD\(\)](#) and [XmlCreate\(\)](#) in Package XML APIs for C, [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), and [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDecl()

Returns the information from a document's XMLDecl. If there is no XMLDecl, returns XMLERR\_NO\_DECL. Returned are the XML version# ("1.0" or "2.0"), the specified encoding, and the standalone value. If encoding is not specified, NULL will be set. The standalone flag is three-state: < 0 if standalone was not specified, 0 if it was specified and FALSE, > 0 if it was specified and TRUE.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetDecl(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext **ver,
    oratext **enc,
    sb4 *std);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
ver	OUT	XML version
enc	OUT	encoding specification
std	OUT	standalone specification

### Returns

(xmlerr) XML error code, perhaps version/encoding/standalone set

## XmlDomGetDocElem()

Returns the root element (node) of the DOM tree, or NULL if there is none. Each document has only one uppermost Element node, called the root element. It is created after a document is parsed successfully, or manually by XmlDomCreateElem then XmlDomAppendChild, and so on.

### Syntax

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomGetDocElem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) root element [or NULL]

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCreateElem\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomGetDocElemById()

Returns the element node which has the given ID. If no such ID is defined, returns NULL. Note that attributes named "ID" are not automatically of type ID; ID attributes (which can have any name) must be declared as type ID in the DTD.

The given ID should be in the data encoding or it might not match.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode* XmlDomGetDocElemById(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    oratext *id);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
id	IN	element's unique ID; data encoding

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) matching element.

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()

Returns a list of all elements in the document tree rooted at the root node with a given tag name, in document order (the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree). If root is `NULL`, the entire document is searched.

The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a `NULL` name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive, and should be in the data encoding or a mismatch might occur.

This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two qualified names with two different prefixes both of which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See `XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS` for the namespace-aware version.

The list should be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList` when it is no longer needed.

The list is not live, it is a snapshot. That is, if a new node which matched the tag name were added to the DOM after the list was returned, the list would not automatically be updated to include the node.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
name	IN	tagname to match; data encoding; * for all

### Returns

(`xmlnodelist *`) new `NodeList` containing all matched Elements.

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetDocElemByID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the given node) with a given namespace URI and local name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is `NULL`, the entire document is searched.

The URI and local name should be in the data encoding. The special local name "\*" matches all local names; a NULL local name matches nothing. Namespace URIs must always match, however, no wildcard is allowed. Note that comparisons are case sensitive. See `XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag` for the non-namespace aware version.

The list should be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList` when it is no longer needed.

The list is not live, it is a snapshot. That is, if a new node which matched the tag name were added to the DOM after the list was returned, the list would not automatically be updated to include the node.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * matches all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * matches all

### Returns

(xmlnodelist \*) new NodeList containing all matched Elements.

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetDocElemByID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetLastError()

Returns the error code of the last error which occurred in the given document.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetLastError(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 if no error

**XmlDomGetSchema()**

Returns URI of schema associated with document, if there is one, else returns NULL. The `XmlLoadDom` functions take a schema location hint (URI); the schema is used for efficient layout of `XMLType` data. If a schema was provided at load time, this function returns TRUE.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetSchema(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) Schema URI or NULL

**See Also:**

[XmlDomIsSchemaBased\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) in [Package XML APIs for C](#)

**XmlDomImportNode()**

Imports a node from one Document to another. The new node is an orphan and has no parent; it must be added to the DOM tree with `XmlDomAppendChild`, and so on. The original node is not modified in any way or removed from its document; instead, a new node is created with copies of all the original node's qualified name, prefix, namespace URI, and local name.

As with `XmlDomCloneNode`, the `deep` controls whether the children of the node are recursively imported. If `FALSE`, only the node itself is imported, and it will have no children. If `TRUE`, all descendants of the node will be imported as well, and an entire new subtree created.

Document and DocumentType nodes cannot be imported. Imported attributes will have their specified flags set to TRUE. Elements will have only their specified attributes imported; non-specified (default) attributes are omitted. New default attributes (for the destination document) are then added.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomImportNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    xmlctx *nctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    boolean deep);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
nctx	IN	XML context of imported node
node	IN	node to import
deep	IN	TRUE to import the subtree recursively

---

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) newly imported node (in this Document).

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCloneNode\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomIsSchemaBased()

Returns flag specifying whether there is a schema associated with this document. The XmlLoadDom functions take a schema location hint (URI); the schema is used for efficient layout of XMLType data. If a schema was provided at load time, this function returns TRUE.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlDomIsSchemaBased(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc);
```



---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

---

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if there is a schema associated with the document

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetSchema\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) in [Package XML APIs for C](#)

---

**XmlDomSaveString()**

Copies the given string into the document's memory pool, so that it persists for the life of the document. The individual string will not be freeable, and the storage will be returned only when the entire document is freed. Works on single-byte or multibyte encodings; for Unicode strings, use `XmlDomSaveString2`.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomSaveString(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc,
    oratext *str);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
str	IN	string to save; data encoding; single- or multi-byte only

---

**Returns**

(oratext \*) saved copy of string

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSaveString2\(\)](#), [XmlFreeDocument\(\)](#) in [Package XML APIs for C](#)

---

## XmlDomSaveString2()

Copies the given string into the document's memory pool, so that it persists for the life of the document. The individual string will not be freeable, and the storage will be returned only when the entire document is free. Works on Unicode strings only; for single-byte or multibyte strings, use `XmlDomSaveString`.

### Syntax

```
ub2* XmlDomSaveString2(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlDocnode *doc,  
    ub2 *ustr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>doc</code>	IN	XML document node
<code>ustr</code>	IN	string to save; data encoding; Unicode only

---

### Returns

(`ub2 *`) saved copy of string

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSaveString\(\)](#), [XmlFreeDocument\(\)](#) in Package XML APIs for C

---

---

## XmlDomSetBaseURI()

Only documents that were loaded from a URI will automatically have a base URI; documents loaded from other sources (`stdin`, `buffer`, and so on) will not naturally have a base URI, so this API is used to set a base URI, for the purposes of relative URI resolution in includes. The base URI should be in the data encoding, and a copy will be made.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetBaseURI(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlDocnode *doc,  
    oratext *uri);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
doc	IN	XML document node
uri	IN	base URI to set; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) XML error code

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetBaseURI\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetDTD()**

Sets the DTD for document. Note this call may only be used for a blank document, before any parsing has taken place. A single DTD can be set for multiple documents, so when a document with a set DTD is freed, the set DTD is not also freed.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetDTD(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlDocnode *doc,
    xmldtdnode *dtdnode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
dtdnode	IN	DocumentType node to set

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetDocOrder()

Sets the document order for each node in the current document. Must be called once on the final document before XSLT processing can occur. Note this is called automatically by the XSLT processor, so ordinarily the user need not make this call.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlDomSetDocOrder(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    ub4 start_id);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
start_id	IN	string ID number

---

### Returns

(ub4) highest ordinal assigned

## XmlDomSetLastError()

Sets the Last Error code for the given document. If doc is NULL, sets the error code for the XML context.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetLastError(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldocnode *doc,  
    xmlerr errcode);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node
errcode	IN	error code to set, 0 to clear error

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) original error code

## XmlDomSync()

Causes a modified DOM to be written back out to its original source, synchronizing the persistent store and in-memory versions.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSync(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	XML document node

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

## DocumentType Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the DocumentType interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-4 Summary of DocumentType DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDEntities()</a>	Get entities of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset()</a>	Get DTD's internal subset.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDName()</a>	Get name of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDNotations()</a>	Get notations of DTD.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDPubID()</a>	Get DTD's public ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDTDSysID()</a>	Get DTD's system ID.

## XmlDomGetDTDEntities()

Returns a named node map of general entities defined by the DTD. If the node is not a DTD, or has no general entities, returns NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlnamedmap* XmlDomGetDTDEntities(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

---

**Returns**

(xmlnamedmap \*) named node map containing entities declared in DTD

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset()

Returns the content model for an element. If there is no DTD, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldtdnode *dtd,  
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node
name	IN	name of Element; data encoding

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) content model subtree

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDPubID\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDTDName()

Returns a DTD's name (specified immediately after the DOCTYPE keyword), or NULL if the node is not type DTD.

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetDTDName(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

### Returns

(orertext \*) name of DTD

### See Also:

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDNotations\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetDTDNotations()

Returns named node map of notations declared by the DTD. If the node is not a DTD or has no Notations, returns NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlnamedmap* XmlDomGetDTDNotations(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

### Returns

(xmlnamedmap \*) named node map containing notations declared in DTD

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDTDPubID()

Returns a DTD's public identifier.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetDTDPubID(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

---

### Returns

(oratext \*) DTD's public identifier [data encoding]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDSysID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetDTDSysID()

Returns a DTD's system identifier.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetDTDSysID(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmldtdnode *dtd);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
dtd	IN	DTD node

---

### Returns

(oratext \*) DTD's system identifier [data encoding]



**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDTD\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDName\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDEntities\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetDTDPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset\(\)](#)

## Element Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Element Interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-5 Summary of Element DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttr()</a>	Return attribute's value given its name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNS()</a>	Return attribute's value given its URI and local name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNode()</a>	Get attribute by name.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS()</a>	Get attribute by name (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildrenByTag()</a>	Get children of element with given tag name (non-namespace aware).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS()</a>	Get children of element with tag name (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag()</a>	Obtain doc elements.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS()</a>	Obtain doc elements (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetTag()</a>	Return an element node's tag name.
<a href="#">XmlDomHasAttr()</a>	Does named attribute exist?
<a href="#">XmlDomHasAttrNS()</a>	Does named attribute exist (namespace aware version)?
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttr()</a>	Remove attribute with specified name.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttrNS()</a>	Remove attribute with specified URI and local name.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()</a>	Remove attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttr()</a>	Set new attribute for element.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNS()</a>	Set new attribute for element (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNode()</a>	Set attribute node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS()</a>	Set attribute node (namespace aware version).

## XmlDomGetAttr()

Returns the value of an element's attribute (specified by name). Note that an attribute may have the empty string as its value, but cannot be NULL. If the element does not have an attribute with the given name, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetAttr(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    orertext *name);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name

---

### Returns

(orertext \*) named attribute's value [data encoding; may be NULL]

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrs\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomGetAttrNS()

Returns the value of an element's attribute (specified by URI and local name). Note that an attribute may have the empty string as its value, but cannot be NULL. If the element does not have an attribute with the given name, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetAttrNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    orertext *uri,  
    orertext *local);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

**Returns**

(oratext \*) named attribute's value [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrs\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrNode()**

Returns an element's attribute specified by name. If the node is not an element or the named attribute does not exist, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomGetAttrNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) attribute with the specified name [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS()**

Returns an element's attribute specified by URI and localname. If the node is not an element or the named attribute does not exist, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

---

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) attribute node with the given URI/local name [or NULL]

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetAttrNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetAttr\(\)](#)

---

---

**XmlDomGetChildrenByTag()**

Returns a list of children of an element with the given tag name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See [XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS](#) for the namespace-aware version. The returned list can be freed with [XmlDomFreeNodeList](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlodelist* XmlDomGetChildrenByTag(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    oratext *name);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	tag name to match; data encoding; * for all

**Returns**

(xmlnodelist \*) node list of matching children

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS()**

Returns a list of children of an element with the given URI and local name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. The URI and local name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all URIs or tag names; a NULL name matches nothing. Note that names are case sensitive. See [XmlDomGetChildrenByTag](#) for the non-namespace version. The returned list can be freed with [XmlDomFreeNodeList](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * matches all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * matches all

**Returns**

(xmlnodelist \*) node list of matching children

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetChildrenByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetElemsByTag()

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the root node) with a given tag name, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is `NULL`, the entire document is searched. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a `NULL` name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. See `XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS` for the namespace-aware version. The returned list can be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList`.

### Syntax

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetElemsByTag(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlemnode *elem,  
    oratext *name);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	tag name to match; data encoding; * for all

---

### Returns

(`xmlnodelist *`) node list of matching elements

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS()

Returns a list of all elements (in the document tree rooted at the root node) with a given URI and localname, in the order in which they would be encountered in a preorder traversal of the tree. If root is `NULL`, the entire document is searched. The tag name should be in the data encoding. The special name "\*" matches all tag names; a `NULL` name matches nothing. Note that tag names are case sensitive. This function is not namespace aware; the full tag names are compared. If two prefixes which map to the same URI are compared, the comparison will fail. The returned list can be freed with `XmlDomFreeNodeList`.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnodelist* XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	namespace URI to match; data encoding; * for all
local	IN	local name to match; data encoding; * for all

**Returns**

(xmlnodelist \*) node list of matching elements

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetTag()**

Returns the `tagName` of a node, which is the same as its name. DOM 1.0 states "...even though there is a generic `nodeName` attribute on the `Node` interface, there is still a `tagName` attribute on the `Element` interface; these two attributes must contain the same value, but the Working Group considers it worthwhile to support both, given the different constituencies the DOM API must satisfy."

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetTag(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) element's name [data encoding]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeName\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomHasAttr()**

Determines if an element has an attribute with the given name. Returns TRUE if so, FALSE if not.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomHasAttr(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    oratext *name);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

---

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if element has attribute with given name

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomHasAttrNS\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomHasAttrNS()**

Determines if an element has an attribute with the given URI and localname. Returns TRUE if so, FALSE if not.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomHasAttrNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local);
```



Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	Element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
local	IN	attribute's local name; data encoding

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if element has attribute with given URI/localname

**See Also:**

[XmlDomHasAttr\(\)](#)

**XmlDomRemoveAttr()**

Removes an attribute (specified by name). If the removed attribute has a default value it is immediately re-created with that default. Note that the attribute is removed from the element's list of attributes, but the attribute node itself is not destroyed.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomRemoveAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomRemoveAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttrNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveAttrNS()

Removes an attribute (specified by URI and local name). If the removed attribute has a default value it is immediately re-created with that default. Note that the attribute is removed from the element's list of attributes, but the attribute node itself is not destroyed.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomRemoveAttrNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI
local	IN	attribute's local name

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttrNode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()

Removes an attribute from an element. If the attribute has a default value, it is immediately re-created with that value (Specified set to FALSE). Returns the removed attribute on success, else NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomRemoveAttrNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    xmlattrnode *oldAttr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
oldAttr	IN	attribute node to remove

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetAttr()**

Creates a new attribute for an element with the given name and value (which should be in the data encoding). If the named attribute already exists, its value is simply replaced. The name and value are not verified, converted, or checked. The value is not parsed, so entity references will not be expanded. The attribute's specified flag will be set.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetAttr(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
name	IN	attribute's name; data encoding
value	IN	attribute's value; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetAttrNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

## XmlDomSetAttrNS()

Creates a new attribute for an element with the given URI, localname and value (which should be in the data encoding). If the named attribute already exists, its value is simply replaced. The name and value are not verified, converted, or checked.

The value is not parsed, so entity references will not be expanded.

The attribute's specified flag will be set.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomSetAttrNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlemnode *elem,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *qname,  
    oratext *value);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
uri	IN	attribute's namespace URI; data encoding
qname	IN	attribute's qualified name; data encoding
value	IN	attribute's value; data encoding

---

---

### See Also:

[XmlDomSetAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomRemoveAttr\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomSetAttrNode()

Adds a new attribute to an element. If an attribute with the given name already exists, it is replaced and the old attribute returned through `oldNode`. If the attribute is new, it is added to the element's list and `oldNode` set to NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomSetAttrNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlemnode *elem,  
    xmlattrnode *newAttr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
newAttr	IN	attribute node to add

---

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node (or NULL)

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS()**

Adds a new attribute to an element. If an attribute with `newNode`'s URI and localname already exists, it is replaced and the old attribute returned through `oldNode`. If the attribute is new, it is added to the element's list and `oldNode` set to NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlattrnode* XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlattrnode *newAttr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	element node
newAttr	IN	attribute node to add

---

**Returns**

(xmlattrnode \*) replaced attribute node [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetAttrNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomCreateAttr\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetAttrValue\(\)](#)

---

## Entity Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `Entity` interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-6 Summary of Entity DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityNotation()</a>	Get entity's notation.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityPubID()</a>	Get entity's public ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntitySysID()</a>	Get entity's system ID.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetEntityType()</a>	Get entity's type.

### XmlDomGetEntityNotation()

For unparsed entities, returns the name of its notation (in the data encoding). For parsed entities and other node types, returns `NULL`.

#### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetEntityNotation(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>ent</code>	IN	entity node

#### Returns

(`orertext *`) entity's notation [data encoding; may be `NULL`]

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#)

---

---

### XmlDomGetEntityPubID()

Returns an entity's public identifier (in the data encoding). If the node is not an entity, or has no defined public ID, returns `NULL`.

#### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetEntityPubID(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) entity's public identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomGetEntitySysID()**

Returns an entity's system identifier (in the data encoding). If the node is not an entity, or has no defined system ID, returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetEntitySysID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) entity's system identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomGetEntityType()**

Returns a boolean for an entity describing whether it is general (TRUE) or parameter (FALSE).

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomGetEntityType(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlentnode *ent);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
ent	IN	entity node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE for general entity, FALSE for parameter entity

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetEntityPubID\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetEntitySysID\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetEntityNotation\(\)](#)

## NamedNodeMap Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the NamedNodeMap interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-7 Summary of NamedNodeMap DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNamedItem()</a>	Return named node from list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNamedItemNS()</a>	Return named node from list (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()</a>	Return n <sup>th</sup> node in list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()</a>	Return length of named node map.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()</a>	Remove node from named node map.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS()</a>	Remove node from named node map (namespace aware version).
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNamedItem()</a>	Set node in named node list.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNamedItemNS()</a>	Set node in named node list (namespace aware version).

### XmlDomGetNamedItem()

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name (which should be in the data encoding). This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case



sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Note this function differs from the DOM spec in that the index of the matching item is also returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNamedItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
name	IN	name of the node to retrieve

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) Node with the specified name [or NULL]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNamedItemNS()

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by URI and localname (which should be in the data encoding). Note this function differs from the DOM spec in that the index of the matching item is also returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNamedItemNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *uri,
    oratext *local);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
uri	IN	namespace URI of the node to retrieve; data encoding

Parameter	In/Out	Description
local	IN	local name of the node to retrieve; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node with given local name and namespace URI [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()**

Retrieves an item from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name (which should be in the data encoding). This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Note this function differs from the DOM specification in that the index of the matching item is also returned. Named "item" in W3C specification.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNodeMapItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
index	IN	0-based index for the map

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node at the nth position in the map (or NULL)

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()

Returns the number of nodes in a NamedNodeMap (the length). Note that nodes are referred to by index, and the range of valid indexes is 0 through length-1.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlDomGetNodeMapLength(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap

### Returns

(ub4) number of nodes in NamedNodeMap

### See Also:

[XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#)

## XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()

Removes a node from a NamedNodeMap, specified by name. This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. If the removed node is an attribute with default value (not specified), it is immediately replaced. The removed node is returned; if no removal took place, NULL is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRemoveNamedItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    oratext *name);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
name	IN	name of node to remove

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node removed from this map

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS()

Removes a node from a `NamedNodeMap`, specified by URI and localname. If the removed node is an attribute with default value (not specified), it is immediately replaced. The removed node is returned; if no removal took place, `NULL` is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnamedmap *map,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
map	IN	NamedNodeMap
uri	IN	namespace URI of the node to remove; data encoding
local	IN	local name of the node to remove; data encoding

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node removed from this map

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomSetNamedItem()

Adds a new node to a `NamedNodeMap`. If a node already exists with the given name, replaces the old node and returns it. If no such named node exists, adds the new node to the map and sets old to `NULL`. This is a non-namespace-aware function; it just

matches (case sensitively) on the whole qualified name. Since some node types have fixed names (`Text`, `Comment`, and so on), trying to set another of the same type will always cause replacement.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomSetNamedItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    xmlnode *newNode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>map</code>	IN	NamedNodeMap
<code>newNode</code>	IN	new node to store in map

### Returns

(`xmlnode *`) the replaced node (or `NULL`)

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomSetNamedItemNS()

Adds a new node to a `NamedNodeMap`. If a node already exists with the given URI and localname, replaces the old node and returns it. If no such named node exists, adds the new node to the map and sets old to `NULL`. Since some node types have fixed names (`Text`, `Comment`, and so on), trying to set another of the same type will always cause replacement.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomSetNamedItemNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnamedmap *map,
    xmlnode *newNode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>map</code>	IN	NamedNodeMap

Parameter	In/Out	Description
newNode	IN	new node to store in map

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) replaced Node [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetNamedItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNamedItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapItem\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#)

## Node Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Node interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-8 Summary of Node DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomAppendChild()</a>	Append new child to node's list of children.
<a href="#">XmlDomCleanNode()</a>	Clean a node (free DOM allocations).
<a href="#">XmlDomCloneNode()</a>	Clone a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeNode()</a>	Free a node allocated with <code>XmlDomCreateXXX</code> .
<a href="#">XmlDomGetAttrs()</a>	Return attributes of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetChildNodes()</a>	Return children of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetDefaultNS()</a>	Get default namespace for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetFirstChild()</a>	Returns first child of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair()</a>	Get first prefix namespace pair.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetLastChild()</a>	Returns last child of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNextPfnPair()</a>	Get subsequent prefix namespace pair.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNextSibling()</a>	Return next sibling of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeLocal()</a>	Get local part of node's qualified name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()</a>	Get local part of node's qualified name as length-encoded string.

**Table 3-8 (Cont.) Summary of Node DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeName()</a>	Get node's name as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeNameLen()</a>	Get node's name as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodePrefix()</a>	Return namespace prefix of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeType()</a>	Get node's numeric type code.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeURI()</a>	Return namespace URI of node as a NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeURILen()</a>	Return namespace URI of node as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeValue()</a>	Get node's value as NULL-terminated string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeValueLen()</a>	Get node value as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeValueStream()</a>	Returns the large data for a node and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()</a>	Get the owner document of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetParentNode()</a>	Get parent node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPrevSibling()</a>	Return previous sibling of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()</a>	Returns the address of a binary stream using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()</a>	Returns the address of a character stream using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()</a>	Returns the address of a binary stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()</a>	Returns the address of a character stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetSourceEntity()</a>	Return the entity node if the input file is an external entity.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetSourceLine()</a>	Return source line number of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetSourceLocation()</a>	Return source location (path, URI, and so on) of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomHasAttr()</a>	Does named attribute exist?
<a href="#">XmlDomHasChildNodes()</a>	Test if node has children.

**Table 3-8 (Cont.) Summary of Node DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomInsertBefore()</a>	Insert new child in to node's list of children.
<a href="#">XmlDomNormalize()</a>	Normalize a node by merging adjacent text nodes.
<a href="#">XmlDomNumAttrs()</a>	Return number of attributes of element.
<a href="#">XmlDomNumChildNodes()</a>	Return number of children of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomPrefixToURI()</a>	Get namespace URI for prefix.
<a href="#">XmlDomRemoveChild()</a>	Remove an existing child node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRenameNode()</a>	Updates the name of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.
<a href="#">XmlDomRenameNodeNS()</a>	Updates the name and URI of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.
<a href="#">XmlDomReplaceChild()</a>	Replace an existing child of a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetDefaultNS()</a>	Set default namespace for node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNodePrefix()</a>	Set namespace prefix of node.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNodeValue()</a>	Set node value.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNodeValueLen()</a>	Set node value as length-encoded string.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetNodeValueStream()</a>	Sets the large "value" (character data) for a node piecemeal from an input stream.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()</a>	Returns the address of a binary input stream, as an <code>OUT istream</code> parameter, using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()</a>	Returns the address of an input character stream, as an <code>OUT istream</code> parameter, using the pull paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()</a>	Returns the address of an input binary stream using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()</a>	Returns the address of a character stream using the push paradigm.
<a href="#">XmlDomValidate()</a>	Validate a node against current DTD.

## XmlDomAppendChild()

Appends the node to the end of the parent's list of children and returns the new node. If `newChild` is a `DocumentFragment`, all of its children are appended in original order; the `DocumentFragment` node itself is not.



**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomAppendChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *parent,
    xmlnode *newChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
parent	IN	parent to receive a new node
newChild	IN	node to add

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node added

**See Also:**

[XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#)

**XmlDomCleanNode()**

Frees parts of the node which were allocated by DOM itself, but does not recurse to children or touch the node's attributes. After freeing part of the node (such as name), a DOM call to get that part (such as `XmlDomGetNodeName`) should return a NULL pointer. Used to manage the allocations of a node parts of which are controlled by DOM, and part by the user. Calling `clean` frees all allocations may by DOM and leaves the user's allocations alone. The user is responsible for freeing their own allocations.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomCleanNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	node to clean

**See Also:**

[XmlDomFreeNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomCloneNode()

Creates and returns a duplicate of a node. The duplicate node has no parent. Cloning an element copies all attributes and their values, including those generated by the XML processor to represent defaulted attributes, but it does not copy any text it contains unless it is a deep clone, since the text is contained in a child text node. Cloning any other type of node simply returns a copy of the node. Note that a clone of an unspecified attribute node is specified. If `deep` is `TRUE`, all children of the node are recursively cloned, and the cloned node will have cloned children; a non-deep clone will have no children.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomCloneNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    boolean deep);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node
<code>deep</code>	IN	<code>TRUE</code> to recursively clone children

---

### Returns

(`xmlnode *`) duplicate (cloned) node

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomImportNode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomFreeNode()

Free a node allocated with `XmlDomCreateXXX`. Frees all resources associated with a node, then frees the node itself. Certain parts of the node are under DOM control, and some parts may be under user control. DOM keeps flags tracking who owns what, and only frees its own allocations. The user is responsible for freeing their own parts of the node before calling `XmlDomFreeNode`.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomFreeNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node to free

**See Also:**

[XmlDomCleanNode\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetAttrs()

Returns a `NamedNodeMap` of attributes of an element node, or `NULL` if it has no attributes. For other node types, `NULL` is returned. Note that if an element once had attributes, but they have all been removed, an empty list will be returned. So, presence of the list does not mean the element has attributes. You must check the size of the list with `XmlDomNumAttrs` or use `XmlDomHasChildNodes` first.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnamedmap* XmlDomGetAttrs(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

**Returns**

(`xmlnamedmap *`) `NamedNodeMap` of node's attributes

**See Also:**

[XmlDomNumAttrs\(\)](#), [XmlDomHasChildNodes\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetChildNodes()

Returns a list of the node's children, or `NULL` if it has no children. Only `Element`, `Document`, `DTD`, and `DocumentFragment` nodes may have children; all other types will return `NULL`.

Note that an empty list may be returned if the node once had children, but all have been removed! That is, the list may exist but have no members. So, presence of the list

alone does not mean the node has children. You must check the size of the list with `XmlDomNumChildNodes` or use `XmlDomHasChildNodes` first.

The `xmlodelist` structure is opaque and can only be manipulated with functions in the `NodeList` interface.

The returned list is live; all changes in the original node are reflected immediately.

### Syntax

```
xmlodelist* XmlDomGetChildNodes(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node

---

### Returns

(`xmlodelist *`) live `NodeList` containing all children of `node`

## XmlDomGetDefaultNS()

Gets the default namespace for a node.

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetDefaultNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	element or attribute DOM node

---

### Returns

(`orertext *`) default namespace for `node` [data encoding; may be NULL]

## XmlDomGetFirstChild()

Returns the first child of a node, or NULL if the node has no children. Only `Element`, `Document`, `DTD`, and `DocumentFragment` nodes may have children; all other types will return NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetFirstChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) first child of node

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetLastChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomHasChildNodes\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetChildNodes\(\)](#), [XmlDomNumChildNodes\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair()**

This function is to allow implementations an opportunity to speedup the iteration of all available prefix-URI bindings available on a given node. It returns a state structure and the prefix and URI of the first prefix-URI mapping. The state structure should be passed to `XmlDomGetNextPfnPair` on the remaining pairs.

**Syntax**

```
xmlpfnspair* XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext **prefix,
    oratext **uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	prefix of first mapping; data encoding
uri	OUT	URI of first mapping; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlpfnspair \*) iterating object or NULL of no prefixes

**XmlDomGetLastChild()**

Returns the last child of a node, or NULL if the node has no children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children; all other types will return NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetLastChild(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) last child of node

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetFirstChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomHasChildNodes\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetChildNodes\(\)](#), [XmlDomNumChildNodes\(\)](#)

---

---

**XmlDomGetNextPfnPair()**

This function is to allow implementations an opportunity to speedup the iteration of all available prefix-URI bindings available on a given node. Given an iterator structure from XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair, returns the next prefix-URI mapping; repeat calls to XmlDomGetNextPfnPair until NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlpfnspair* XmlDomGetNextPfnPair(  
    xmlctx *xctx  
    xmlpfnspair *pfns,  
    oratext **prefix,  
    oratext **uri);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	prefix of next mapping; data encoding
uri	OUT	URI of next mapping; data encoding

**Returns**

(xmlpfnspair \*) iterating object, NULL when no more pairs

**XmlDomGetNextSibling()**

Returns the node following a node at the same level in the DOM tree. That is, for each child of a parent node, the next sibling of that child is the child which comes after it. If a node is the last child of its parent, or has no parent, NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNextSibling(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node immediately following node at same level

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNodeLocal()**

Returns the namespace local name for a node as a NULL-terminated string. If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen` which returns the local name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetNodeLocal(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(orertext \*) local name of node [data encoding]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeURI\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()**

Returns the namespace local name for a node as a length-encoded string. If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), then the local name is the same as the name.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeLocal` which returns the local name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    orertext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context



Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of local name, in characters

### Returns

(oratext \*) local name of node [data encoding]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeURLen\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeName()

Returns the (fully-qualified) name of a node (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string, for example `bar\0` or `foo:bar\0`.

Note that some node types have fixed names: `"#text"`, `"#cdata-section"`, `"#comment"`, `"#document"`, `"#document-fragment"`.

A node's name cannot be changed once it is created, so there is no matching `SetNodeName` function.

A length-based version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeNameLen` which returns the node name as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeName(
    xmlctx *ctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of node [data encoding]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeNameLen\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNodeNameLen()**

Returns the (fully-qualified) name of a node (in the data encoding) as a length-encoded string, for example "bar", 3 or "foo:bar", 7.

Note that some node types have fixed names: "#text", "#cdata-section", "#comment", "#document", "#document-fragment".

A node's name cannot be changed once it is created, so there is no matching SetNodeName function.

A NULL-terminated version is available as XmlDomGetNodeName which returns the node name as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be XMLType, then the node's name will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-encoded GetXXX functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the name.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than buflen, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and len will return the actual length.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeNameLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of name, in characters

**Returns**

(or `oralex *` ) name of node, with length of name set in 'len'

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeName\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNodePrefix()**

Returns the namespace prefix for a node (as a NULL-terminated string). If the node's name is not fully qualified (has no prefix), NULL is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oralex* XmlDomGetNodePrefix(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(or `oralex *` ) namespace prefix of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

**XmlDomGetNodeType()**

Returns the type code of a node. The type names and numeric values match the DOM specification:

- ELEMENT\_NODE=1
- ATTRIBUTE\_NODE=2
- TEXT\_NODE=3
- CDATA\_SECTION\_NODE=4
- ENTITY\_REFERENCE\_NODE=5
- ENTITY\_NODE=6
- PROCESSING\_INSTRUCTION\_NODE=7
- COMMENT\_NODE=8
- DOCUMENT\_NODE=9
- DOCUMENT\_TYPE\_NODE=10
- DOCUMENT\_FRAGMENT\_NODE=11

- NOTATION\_NODE=12

Additional Oracle extension node types are as follows:

- ELEMENT\_DECL\_NODE
- ATTR\_DECL\_NODE
- CP\_ELEMENT\_NODE
- CP\_CHOICE\_NODE
- CP\_PCDATA\_NODE
- CP\_STAR\_NODE
- CP\_PLUS\_NODE
- CP\_OPT\_NODE

### Syntax

```
xmlnodetype XmlDomGetNodeType(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

---

### Returns

(xmlnodetype) numeric type-code of the node

## XmlDomGetNodeURI()

Returns the namespace URI for a node (in the data encoding) as a NULL-terminated string. If the node's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeURILen` which returns the URI as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

### Syntax

```
oracext* XmlDomGetNodeURI(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(oratext \*) namespace URI of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetNodeURILen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeURILen()

Returns the namespace URI for a node (in the data encoding) as length-encoded string. If the node's name is not qualified (does not contain a namespace prefix), it will have the default namespace in effect when the node was created (which may be NULL).

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeURI` which returns the URI value as NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Get functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-NULL and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buflen`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeURILen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
buf	IN	input buffer; optional

Parameter	In/Out	Description
buflen	IN	input buffer length; optional
len	OUT	length of URI, in characters

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) namespace URI of node [data encoding; may be NULL]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeURI\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodePrefix\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeLocal\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeValue()

Returns the "value" (associated character data) for a node as a NULL-terminated string. Character and general entities will have been replaced. Only `Attr`, `CDATA`, `Comment`, `ProcessingInstruction` and `Text` nodes have values, all other node types have NULL value.

A length-encoded version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeValueLen` which returns the node value as a pointer and length, for use if the data is known to use `XMLType` backing store.

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetNodeValue(  
    xmlctx *ctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) value of node

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeValueLen\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeValueLen()

Returns the "value" (associated character data) for a node as a length-encoded string. Character and general entities will have been replaced. Only `Attr`, `CDATA`, `Comment`, `PI` and `Text` nodes have values, all other node types have `NULL` value.

A `NULL`-terminated version is available as `XmlDomGetNodeValue` which returns the node value as `NULL`-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based `Get` functions will avoid having to copy and `NULL`-terminate the data.

If both the input buffer is non-`NULL` and the input buffer length is nonzero, then the value will be stored in the input buffer. Else, the implementation will return its own buffer.

If the actual length is greater than `buf len`, then a truncated value will be copied into the buffer and `len` will return the actual length.

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlDomGetNodeValueLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *buf,
    ub4 buflen,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node
<code>buf</code>	IN	input buffer; optional
<code>buflen</code>	IN	input buffer length; optional
<code>len</code>	OUT	length of value, in bytes

### Returns

(`oratext *`) value of node

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSetNodeValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeValue\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeValueStream()

Returns the large data for a node and sends it in pieces to the user's output stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to access chunked data of that type. Only XMLType chunks its data (sometimes); XDK's data is always contiguous.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetNodeValueStream(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    xmlostream *ostream);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
ostream	IN	output stream object

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSetNodeValueStream\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeValue\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetNodeValueLen\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()

Returns the Document node associated with a node. Each node may belong to only one document, or may not be associated with any document at all (such as immediately after XmlDomCreateElem, and so on). The "owning" document [node] is returned, or NULL for an orphan node.

### Syntax

```
xmldocnode* XmlDomGetOwnerDocument(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---



Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlDocnode \*) document node is in

**XmlDomGetParentNode()**

Returns a node's parent node. All nodes types except `Attr`, `Document`, `DocumentFragment`, `Entity`, and `Notation` may have a parent (these five exceptions always have a `NULL` parent). If a node has just been created but not yet added to the DOM tree, or if it has been removed from the DOM tree, its parent is also `NULL`.

**Syntax**

```
xmlNode* XmlDomGetParentNode(
    xmlCtxt *xctx,
    xmlNode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlNode \*) parent of node

**XmlDomGetPrevSibling()**

Returns the node preceding a node at the same level in the DOM tree. That is, for each child of a parent node, the previous sibling of that child is the child which came before it. If a node is the first child of its parent, or has no parent, `NULL` is returned.

**Syntax**

```
xmlNode* XmlDomGetPrevSibling(
    xmlCtxt *xctx,
    xmlNode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node immediately preceding node at same level

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNextSibling\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()

Returns the address of a binary stream using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise the function returns NULL

---

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the readable binary stream; use OraStreamRead() on the output, not OraStreamReadChar()

## XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()

Returns the address of a character stream using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node; may be any type supported by XML DB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the readable character stream; use OraStreamReadChar() on the output, not OraStreamRead().

**XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of a binary stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    orastream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise returns an error
ostream	OUT	application implementation of orastream; use OraStreamWrite() to write the value, not OraStreamWriteChar()

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ ] on success

**XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of a character stream, as an OUT ostream parameter, using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    orastream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node; any type supported by XML DB
ostream	IN	application implementation of orastream; use OraStreamWriteChar( ) to write the value, not OraStreamWrite( )

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ ] on success

**XmlDomGetSourceEntity()**

Returns the external entity node whose inclusion caused the creation of the given node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlentnode* XmlDomGetSourceEntity(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlentnode \*) entity node if the input is from an external entity

**XmlDomGetSourceLine()**

Returns the line# in the original source where the node started. The first line in every input is line #1.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomGetSourceLine(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(ub4) line number of node in original input source

**XmlDomGetSourceLocation()**

Return source location (path, URI, and so on) of node. Note this will be in the compiler encoding, not the data encoding!

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomGetSourceLocation(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) full path of input source [in compiler encoding]

**XmlDomHasAttrs()**

Test if an element has attributes. Returns TRUE if any attributes of any sort are defined (namespace or regular).

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomHasAttrs(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if element has attributes

**XmlDomHasChildNodes()**

Test if a node has children. Only Element, Document, DTD, and DocumentFragment nodes may have children. Note that just because XmlDomGetChildNodes returns a list does not mean the node actually has children,

since the list may be empty, so a non-NULL return from `XmlDomGetChildNodes` should not be used as a test.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlDomHasChildNodes(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node

---

### Returns

(boolean) TRUE if the node has any children

## XmlDomInsertBefore()

Inserts the node `newChild` before the existing child node `refChild` in the parent node. If `refChild` is NULL, appends to parent's children as for each `XmlDomAppendChild`; otherwise it must be a child of the given parent. If `newChild` is a `DocumentFragment`, all of its children are inserted (in the same order) before `refChild`; the `DocumentFragment` node itself is not. If `newChild` is already in the DOM tree, it is first removed from its current position.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomInsertBefore(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *parent,  
    xmlnode *newChild,  
    xmlnode *refChild);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>parent</code>	IN	parent that receives a new child
<code>newChild</code>	IN	node to insert
<code>refChild</code>	IN	reference node

---

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node being inserted

**See Also:**

[XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveChild\(\)](#)

**XmlDomNormalize()**

Normalizes the subtree rooted at an element, merges adjacent Text nodes children of elements. Note that adjacent Text nodes will never be created during a normal parse, only after manipulation of the document with DOM calls.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomNormalize(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

**XmlDomNumAttrs()**

Returns the number of attributes of an element. Note that just because a list is returned by `XmlDomGetAttrs` does not mean it contains any attributes; it may be an empty list with zero length.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomNumAttrs(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
elem	IN	XML element node

**Returns**

(ub4) number of attributes of node

**XmlDomNumChildNodes()**

Returns the number of children of a node. Only `Element`, `Document`, `DTD`, and `DocumentFragment` nodes may have children, all other types return 0. Note that just because `XmlDomGetChildNodes` returns a list does not mean that it contains any children; it may be an empty list with zero length.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomNumChildNodes(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(ub4) number of children of node

**XmlDomPrefixToURI()**

Given a namespace prefix and a node, returns the namespace URI mapped to that prefix. If the given node doesn't have a matching prefix, its parent is tried, then its parent, and so on, all the way to the root node. If the prefix is undefined, `NULL` is returned.

**Syntax**

```
oratext* XmlDomPrefixToURI(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    oratext *prefix);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	IN	prefix to map

---

**Returns**

(oratext \*) URI for prefix [data encoding; `NULL` if no match]

**XmlDomRemoveChild()**

Removes a node from its parent's list of children and returns it. The node is orphaned; its parent will be `NULL` after removal.



**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRemoveChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *oldChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
oldChild	IN	node to remove

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node removed

**See Also:**

[XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceChild\(\)](#)

**XmlDomRenameNode()**

Updates the name of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.

If the prefix does not have a current mapping, the user should add the mapping by creating an xmlns attribute and associating it with this element node by calling [XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#)[XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#). A namespace attribute node cannot be modified.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRenameNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
tagname	IN	The new tagname

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) the changed node

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomRenameNodeNS()

Updates the name and URI of a node, for element and attribute nodes only.

If the prefix does not have a current mapping, the user should add the mapping by creating an `xmlns` attribute and associating it with this element node by calling [XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#). A namespace attribute node cannot be modified.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRenameNodeNS(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *tagname);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	XML node
<code>uri</code>	IN	The new URI; if <code>NULL</code> , retains existing URI
<code>tagname</code>	IN	The new tagname

---

### Returns

(`xmlnode *`) the changed node.

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomReplaceChild()

Replaces the child node `oldChild` with the new node `newChild` in `oldChild`'s parent, and returns `oldChild` (which is now orphaned, with a `NULL` parent). If `newChild` is a `DocumentFragment`, all of its children are inserted in place of `oldChild`; the `DocumentFragment` node itself is not. If `newChild` is already in the DOM tree, it is first removed from its current position.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomReplaceChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *newChild,
    xmlnode *oldChild);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
newChild	IN	new node that is substituted
oldChild	IN	old node that is replaced

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) node replaced

**See Also:**

[XmlDomAppendChild\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertBefore\(\)](#), [XmlDomRemoveChild\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetDefaultNS()**

Set the default namespace for a node

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetDefaultNS(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *defns);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	element or attribute DOM node
defns	IN	new default namespace for the node

**XmlDomSetNodePrefix()**

Sets the namespace prefix of node (as NULL-terminated string). Does not verify the prefix is defined. Just causes a new qualified name to be formed from the new prefix and the old local name; the new qualified name will be under DOM control and should not be managed by the user.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetNodePrefix(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    oratext *prefix);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
prefix	OUT	new namespace prefix

---

**XmlDomSetNodeValue()**

Sets a node's value (character data) as a NULL-terminated string. Does not allow setting the value to NULL. Only `Attr`, `CDATA`, `Comment`, `PI` and `Text` nodes have values; trying to set the value of another type of node is a no-op. The new value must be in the data encoding. It is not verified, converted, or checked.

The value is not copied, its pointer is just stored. The user is responsible for persistence and freeing of that data.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetNodeValue(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    oratext *value);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
value	IN	node's new value; data encoding; user control

---

**Returns**

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, 0 on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeValue\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNodeValueLen\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomSetNodeValueLen()

Sets the value (associated character data) for a node as a length-encoded string.

A NULL-terminated version is available as `XmlDomSetNodeValue` which takes the node value as a NULL-terminated string. If the backing store is known to be `XMLType`, then the node's data will be stored internally as length-encoded. Using the length-based Set functions will avoid having to copy and NULL-terminate the data.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetNodeValueLen(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    oratext *value,
    ub4 len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
value	IN	node's new value; data encoding; user control
len	IN	length of value, in bytes

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, 0 on success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomSetNodeValueLen\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomSetNodeValueStream()

Sets the large "value" (character data) for a node piecemeal from an input stream. For very large values, it is not always possible to store them [efficiently] as a single contiguous chunk. This function is used to store chunked data of that type. Used only for `XMLType` data; XDK's data is always contiguous.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomSetNodeValueStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node,
    xmlistream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node
istream	IN	input stream object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, 0 on success

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNodeValueStream\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetNodeValue\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of a binary input stream, as an OUT istream parameter, using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr *XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node
    orastream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB, otherwise returns an error
istream	OUT	input stream object; the method OraStreamRead() must be used to read this value, not OraStreamReadChar()

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ ] on success

**XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of an input character stream, as an OUT istream parameter, using the pull paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr *XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node
    orcharacterinputstream *istream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be any type supported by XML DB
istream	OUT	input stream object; the method OraStreamReadChar() must be used to read this value, not OraStreamRead().

**Returns**

(xmlerr \*) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ ] on success

**XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream()**

Returns the address of an input binary stream using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream* XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; may be RAW or BLOB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the binary stream; to read the output, use OraStreamWrite() instead of OraStreamWriteChar()

**XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream()**

Returns the address of a character stream using the push paradigm.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	XML node; any type supported by XML DB

**Returns**

(orastream \*) the character stream; to read the output, use OraStreamWriteChar() instead of OraStreamWrite()

**XmlDomValidate()**

Given a root node, validates it against the current DTD.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomValidate(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
node	IN	node to validate

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] means node is valid

**NodeList Interface for DOM XML C APIs**

The following table summarizes the methods available through the NodeList interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-9 Summary of NodeList DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomFreeNodeList()</a>	Free a node list returned by XmlDomGetElemsByTag, and so on.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeListItem()</a>	Return n <sup>th</sup> node in list.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNodeListLength()</a>	Return length of node list.



## XmlDomFreeNodeList()

Free a node list returned by `XmlDomGetElemsByTag` or related functions, releasing all resources associated with it. If given a node list that is part of the DOM proper (such as the children of a node), does nothing.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDomFreeNodeList(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnodelist *list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList to free

### See Also:

[XmlDomGetElemsByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomGetChildrenByTag\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS\(\)](#)

## XmlDomGetNodeListItem()

Return nth node in a node list. The first item is index 0.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomGetNodeListItem(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnodelist *list,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList
index	IN	index into list

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) node at the nth position in node list [or NULL]

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetNodeListLength\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetNodeListLength()

Returns the number of nodes in a node list (its length). Note that nodes are referred to by index, so the range of valid indexes is 0 through length-1.

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlDomGetNodeListLength(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlnodelist *list);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
list	IN	NodeList

---

### Returns

(ub4) number of nodes in node list

---

**See Also:**[XmlDomGetNodeListItem\(\)](#), [XmlDomFreeNodeList\(\)](#)

---

## Notation Interface for DOM XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `Notation` interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-10 Summary of NodeList DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

---

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNotationPubID()</a>	Get notation's public ID
<a href="#">XmlDomGetNotationSysID()</a>	Get notation's system ID.

---

## XmlDomGetNotationPubID()

Return a notation's public identifier (in the data encoding).

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetNotationPubID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnotenode *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
note	IN	Notation node

**Returns**

(orertext \*) notation's public identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNotationSysID\(\)](#)

**XmlDomGetNotationSysID()**

Return a notation's system identifier (in the data encoding).

**Syntax**

```
orertext* XmlDomGetNotationSysID(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnotenode *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
note	IN	Notation node

**Returns**

(orertext \*) notation's system identifier [data encoding; may be NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetNotationPubID\(\)](#)

**ProcessingInstruction Interface for DOM XML C APIs**

The following table summarizes the methods available through the ProcessingInstruction interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-11 Summary of ProcessingInstruction DOM Package Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPIData()</a>	Get processing instruction's data.
<a href="#">XmlDomGetPITarget()</a>	Get PI's target.
<a href="#">XmlDomSetPIData()</a>	Set processing instruction's data.

## XmlDomGetPIData()

Returns the content (data) of a processing instruction (in the data encoding). If the node is not a `ProcessingInstruction`, returns `NULL`. The content is the part from the first non-whitespace character after the target until the ending "`?>`".

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetPIData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlpinode *pi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>pi</code>	IN	<code>ProcessingInstruction</code> node

### Returns

(`orertext *`) processing instruction's data [data encoding]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomGetPITarget()

Returns a processing instruction's target string. If the node is not a `ProcessingInstruction`, returns `NULL`. The target is the first token following the markup that begins the `ProcessingInstruction`. All `ProcessingInstructions` must have a target, though the data part is optional.

### Syntax

```
orertext* XmlDomGetPITarget(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlpinode *pi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
pi	IN	ProcessingInstruction node

**Returns**

(oratext \*) processing instruction's target [data encoding]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#), [XmlDomSetPIData\(\)](#)

**XmlDomSetPIData()**

Sets a ProcessingInstruction's content, which must be in the data encoding. It is not permitted to set the data to NULL. If the node is not a ProcessingInstruction, does nothing. The new data is not verified, converted, or checked.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlDomSetPIData(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlpinode *pi,
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
pi	IN	ProcessingInstruction node
data	IN	ProcessingInstruction's new data; data encoding

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetPITarget\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetPIData\(\)](#)

**Text Interface for DOM XML C APIs**

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Text interface of DOM for XML C APIs.

**Table 3-12 Summary of Text DOM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomSplitText()</a>	Split text node in to two.

## XmlDomSplitText()

Splits a single text node into two text nodes; the original data is split between them. If the given node is not type text, or the offset is outside of the original data, does nothing and returns NULL. The offset is zero-based, and is in characters, not bytes. The original node is retained, its data is just truncated. A new text node is created which contains the remainder of the original data, and is inserted as the next sibling of the original. The new text node is returned.

### Syntax

```
xmltextnode* XmlDomSplitText(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmltextnode *textnode,  
    ub4 offset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
textnode	IN	Text node
offset	IN	0-based character count at which to split text

### Returns

(xmltextnode \*) new text node

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomGetCharData\(\)](#), [XmlDomAppendData\(\)](#), [XmlDomInsertData\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomDeleteData\(\)](#), [XmlDomReplaceData\(\)](#)

---

## Package Event for XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Event interface for XML C APIs.

**Table 4-1 Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvCleanPPCtx()</a>	Cleans up internal structures related to a parse operation. This will not destroy the event context. The event context can be reused after this call.
<a href="#">XmlEvCreatePPCtx()</a>	Creates an Event context in pull-parse mode.
<a href="#">XmlEvCreateSVCtx()</a>	Creates an event context for the streaming validator.
<a href="#">XmlEvDestroyPPCtx()</a>	Destroys the event context. Terminates parsing. May be called at any time during a parsing operation.
<a href="#">XmlEvDestroySVCtx()</a>	Terminates an event context created by a streaming validator.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrCount()</a>	Retrieves the number of attributes for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody()</a>	Retrieves the attribute body in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute body in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount()</a>	Retrieves the number of attributes in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName()</a>	Retrieves the element name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated element name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName()</a>	Retrieves the local name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.

---

**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclName()</a>	Retrieves the attribute name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix()</a>	Retrieves the attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML_EVENT_ATTLIST_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrID()</a>	Retrieves the ID for the attribute's QNAME, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrLocalName()</a>	Retrieves the attribute local name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrName()</a>	Retrieves the attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrName0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrPrefix()</a>	Retrieves the prefix tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrURI()</a>	Retrieves the attribute URI for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrURI0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute URI for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrUriID()</a>	Retrieves the ID for the attribute's URI, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrValue()</a>	Retrieves the attribute value for one of the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.



**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvGetAttrValue0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute value for the XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetElDeclContent()</a>	Retrieves the element declaration content for XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetElDeclContent0()</a>	Retrieves the element declaration content for XML_EVENT_ELEMENT_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetEncoding()</a>	Returns the value of the encoding specified.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetError()</a>	Retrieves the error number when the XML_EVENT_FATAL_ERROR or XML_EVENT_ERROR event is returned by an <a href="#">XmlEvNext()</a>
<a href="#">XmlEvGetName()</a>	Returns the name of for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and the length of the event in the OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetName0()</a>	Retrieves a NULL-terminated name for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocalName()</a>	Retrieves the local name tag for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocalName0()</a>	Retrieves a NULL-terminated local name tag for either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:
<a href="#">XmlEvGetLocation()</a>	Retrieves the location during parsing, as OUT parameters for the line number of the input stream and its path.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPIData()</a>	Retrieves the text for XML_EVENT_PI or XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPIData0()</a>	Retrieves NULL-terminated text for XML_EVENT_PI or XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPITarget()</a>	Retrieves the target for XML_EVENT_PI and XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPITarget0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated target for XML_EVENT_PI and XML_EVENT_PI_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPEIsGen()</a>	Determines if the general entity was declared, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION.

**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPERepl()</a>	Retrieves the replacement text of PE declaration, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPERepl0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated replacement text of PE declaration, XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPrefix()</a>	Retrieves the prefix tag for one of either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPrefix0()</a>	Retrieves the prefix tag for one of either XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events..
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPubId()</a>	Retrieves the public id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetPubId0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated public id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetSysId()</a>	Retrieves the system id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetSysId0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated system id for XML_EVENT_PE_DECLARATION, XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION, or XML_EVENT_NOTATION_DECLARATION events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetTagID()</a>	Retrieves the ID for the tag's QNAME, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetTagUriID()</a>	Retrieves the ID for the tag's URI, for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT and XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetText()</a>	Retrieves the text for XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS, XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT, XML_EVENT_SPACE, XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT, XML_EVENT_CDATA, and XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

**Table 4-1 (Cont.) Summary of Event Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlEvGetText0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated text for XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS, XML_EVENT_CHARACTERS_CONT, XML_EVENT_SPACE, XML_EVENT_SPACE_CONT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT, XML_EVENT_COMMENT_CONT, XML_EVENT_CDATA, and XML_EVENT_CDATA_CONT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetUENdata()</a>	Retrieves the ndata for XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION event, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetUENdata0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated ndata for XML_EVENT_UE_DECLARATION event.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetURI()</a>	Retrieves the URI tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:
<a href="#">XmlEvGetURI0()</a>	Retrieves the NULL-terminated URI tag for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT or XML_EVENT_END_ELEMENT events.
<a href="#">XmlEvGetVersion()</a>	Provides information about version specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified()</a>	Provides information about encoding specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsNamespaceAttr()</a>	Determines if an attribute is a namespace attribute for XML_EVENT_START_ELEMENT event.
<a href="#">XmlEvIsStandalone()</a>	Provides information about standalone specification in XML declaration for the XML_EVENT_START_DOCUMENT event
<a href="#">XmlEvNext()</a>	Gets the next event and advances the parser.
<a href="#">XmlEvNextTag()</a>	Advances the parser to the next tag event.
<a href="#">XmlEvLoadPPDoc()</a>	Loads a new document and configures it for pull parsing.
<a href="#">XmlEvSchemaValidate()</a>	Validates XML documents represented by events.

## XmlEvCleanPPCtx()

Cleans up internal structures related to a parse operation. This will not destroy the event context. The event context can be reused after this call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlEvCleanPPCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evtx	IN	XmlEvents context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

**XmlEvCreatePPCtx()**

Creates an Event context in pull-parse mode.

The document is loaded using `XmlEvLoadPPDoc`. The actual parsing is driven by multiple calls to `XmlEvNext()`. After each call, relevant information may be retrieved by calls to the various `XmlEvGetXXX()` functions. Basic set of properties are the same as for `XmlLoadDom`. Input source should be specified with `XmlEvLoadPPDoc()` call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlevctx *XmlEvCreatePPCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *xerr,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xerr	IN	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK [ 0 ] on success

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	<p>These additional properties should be supplied with a terminal NULL:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( "expand_entities" , boolean ) that, when FALSE, causes parsed non-parameter entity references not be expanded. By default such references are expanded.</li> <li>( "use_buffer" , buffer ) is the address of a buffer that when specified, will use the buffer to collect data that should be returned back to the user. The <code>getXXX()</code> functions will return this buffer as a data pointer.</li> <li>( "use_buffer_len" , lengthOfBuffer ) is the number of bytes in a buffer, the actual length of the buffer, and no more than the specified length is collected. In the case, only part of the data is collected, generating the CONT flavor of the event is generated. Subsequent calls to <code>XmlEventsNext</code> provide additional data. Sequence of CONT-flavored events is always terminated by a non -CONT event. The buffer may be only partially filled.</li> <li>( "get_id_callback" , function ) is the address for the callback function, to convert text base names to 8-byte IDs. Once such function is supplied, the user is allowed to use <code>XmlEvGetTagID</code>, <code>XmlEvGetAttrID</code>, <code>XmlEvGetTagUriID</code>, and <code>XmlEvGetAttrUriID</code>.</li> <li>( "raw_buffer_len" , length ) is the number of bytes in a buffer. By default, this parameter is 256K. Raw buffer is used to read the input data and perform character conversion, and also to convert CRLFs and CRs to LFs.</li> <li>( "error_callback" , callback ) provides the address of a callback function that is invoked to signal illegal use of an API for that event.</li> </ul> <p>These optional parameters should be used in the following manner:</p> <pre>xmlEvctx *XmlEvCreatePPctx(     xmlctx *xctx,     xmlerr *xerr,     ("expand_entities", mode),     ("use_buffer", buffer),     ("use_buffer_len", length),     ("get_id_callback", function),     ("raw_buffer_len", length),     ("error_callback", callback) );</pre>

### Returns

(xmlEvctx) Event context to be passed on subsequent calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#)

## XmlEvCreateSVCTX()

Creates an event context for the streaming validator. Initializes the streaming validator and returns an event context that can be used in subsequent calls.

Use in conjunction with [XmlEvDestroySVCTX\(\)](#)[XmlEvDestroySVCTX\(\)](#). This is a transparent method. An alternate approach would be to use the opaque [XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#)[XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlEvCtx *XmlEvCreateSVCtx(
    xmlCtx *xctx,
    xsdCtx *sctx,
    xmlEvCtx *docEvCtx,
    xmlErr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context; must be valid
sctx	IN	Schema context; must be valid
docEvCtx	IN	Event context for the document that is validated
err	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK[0] on success

**Returns**

(xmlEvCtx) Event context to be passed on subsequent calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#)[XmlEvNext\(\)](#)

## XmlEvDestroyPPCtx()

Destroys the event context. Terminates parsing. May be called at any time during a parsing operation.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlEvDestroyPPCtx(
    xmlEvCtx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

## XmlEvDestroySVCtx()

Terminates an event context created by a streaming validator. Returns XMLERR\_OK[0] on success, or a numeric error code on failure.

Use in conjunction with [XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#)[XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#). This is a transparent method. An alternate approach would be to use the opaque [XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#)[XmlEvSchemaValidate\(\)](#).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlEvDestroySVCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlevctx *evCtx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evCtx	IN	Event context that should be terminated

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

**XmlEvGetAttrCount()**

Retrieves the number of attributes for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlEvGetAttrCount(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(ub4) the number of attributes

**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody()**

Retrieves the attribute body in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the declaration body

**XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute body in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the declaration body

**XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount()**

Retrieves the number of attributes in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(ub4) number of attributes



## XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName()

Retrieves the element name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName(
    xmlvctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

### Returns

(oratext\*) the element name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated element name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLLIST\_DECLARATION.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0(
    xmlvctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the element name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName()

Retrieves the local name of the attribute declaration event, XML\_EVENT\_ATTLLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName(
    xmlvctx *evctx,
```

```
ub4 index
ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratest\*) the local name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name in attribute declaration event, XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratest\*) the local name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclName()

Retrieves the attribute name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetAttrDeclName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(orertext\*) the attribute name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(orertext\*) the attribute name

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix()

Retrieves the attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLLIST\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix in attribute declaration XML\_EVENT\_ATTLIST\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrID()

Retrieves the ID for the attribute's QName, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmlEvGetAttrID(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of attribute

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName()**

Retrieves the attribute local name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrLocalName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute local name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrName()**

Retrieves the attribute name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

**XmlEvGetAttrName0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute name for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute; ignored for XML_EVENT_START_ATTR

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute name

## XmlEvGetAttrPrefix()

Retrieves the prefix tag for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrPrefix(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute prefix for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute prefix

## XmlEvGetAttrURI()

Retrieves the attribute URI for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrURI(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute URI

## XmlEvGetAttrURI0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute URI for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrURI0(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context



Parameter	In/Out	Description
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the attribute URI

## XmlEvGetAttrUriID()

Retrieves the ID for the attribute's URI, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmlEvGetAttrUriID(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of attribute

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

## XmlEvGetAttrValue()

Retrieves the attribute value for one of the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetAttrValue(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

Parameter	In/Out	Description
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratest\*) the attribute value

**XmlEvGetAttrValue0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated attribute value for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events.

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetAttrValue0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

**Returns**

(oratest\*) the attribute value

**XmlEvGetElDeclContent()**

Retrieves the element declaration content for XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetElDeclContent(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratest\*) the declaration content

## XmlEvGetElDeclContent0()

Retrieves the element declaration content for XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetElDeclContent0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the declaration content

## XmlEvGetEncoding()

Returns the value of the encoding specified in either [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#) call or [XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#) call.

### Syntax

```
oratext *XmlEvGetEncoding(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(oratext\*) the encoding value in out-encoding; NULL if no encoding is specified

## XmlEvGetError()

Retrieves the error number when the XML\_EVENT\_FATAL\_ERROR or XML\_EVENT\_ERROR event is returned by a [XmlEvNext\(\)](#) call.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlEvGetError(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    oratext **message);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
message	IN	the error message

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error number

**XmlEvGetName()**

Returns the name of the events, and the length of the event in the OUT len parameter. The event name could be one of the following:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ENTITY
- XML\_EVENT\_ENTITY\_REFERENCE
- XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) The name

**XmlEvGetName0()**

Retrieves a NULL-terminated name for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ENTITY
- XML\_EVENT\_ENTITY\_REFERENCE
- XML\_EVENT\_ELEMENT\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATTENTION\_DECLARATION

### Syntax

```
orertext *XmlEventGetName0(
    xmleventctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

### Returns

(orertext\*) The name

## XmlEvGetLocalName()

Retrieves the local name tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

### Syntax

```
orertext *XmlEvGetLocalName(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

### Returns

(orertext\*) local name tag

## XmlEvGetLocalName0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated local name tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetLocalName0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) local name tag

## XmlEvGetLocation()

Retrieves the location during parsing, as OUT parameters for the line number of the input stream and its path. Can be used at any time during the parsing processes.

**Syntax**

```
void *XmlEvGetLocation(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *line,
    oratext **path);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
line	OUT	line number
path	OUT	URL or file name

## XmlEvGetPIData()

Retrieves the text for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPIData(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) data

**XmlEvGetPIData0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated data for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPIData0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) data

**XmlEvGetPITarget()**

Retrieves the target for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPITarget(
    xmlevctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) target

**XmlEvGetPITarget0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated target for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PI
- XML\_EVENT\_PI\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPITarget0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) target

**XmlEvGetPEIsGen()**

Determines if the general entity was declared, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlEvGetPEIsGen(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

TRUE for a general entity, FALSE if a parameter

**XmlEvGetPERepl()**

Retrieves the replacement text of PE declaration, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION. Also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter.



**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPERepl(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratext\*) PE replacement text

**XmlEvGetPERepl0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated replacement text of PE declaration, XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPERepl0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) PE replacement text

**XmlEvGetPrefix()**

Retrieves the prefix tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPrefix(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the prefix

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the prefix tag

## XmlEvGetPrefix0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated prefix tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPrefix0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) the prefix tag

## XmlEvGetPubId()

Retrieves the public id for one of the following events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetPubId(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratest\*) public id

**XmlEvGetPubId0()**

Retrieves the NULL-terminated public id for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetPubId0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returnsb**

(oratest\*) public id

**XmlEvGetSysId()**

Retrieves the system id for one of the following events; also, provides the length as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetSysId(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	the length

**Returns**

(oratest\*) system id

## XmlEvGetSysId0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated system id for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_PE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION
- XML\_EVENT\_NOTATION\_DECLARATION

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetSysId0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratest\*) system id

## XmlEvGetTagID()

Retrieves the ID for the tag's QNAME, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmlEvGetTagID(
    xmlevctx *evctx)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmlEvGetTagUriID()**

Retrieves the ID for the tag's URI, for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT and XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT events. Invokes the user-supplied ID callback specified in [XmlEvCreatePPCtx\(\)](#); if the callback is not specified, returns 0.

**Syntax**

```
sb8 XmlEvGetTagUriID(
    xmlvctx *evctx)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(sb8) the ID

**XmlEvGetText()**

Retrieves the text for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS
- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetText(
    xmlvctx *evctx
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratest\*) event text

## XmlEvGetText0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated text for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS
- XML\_EVENT\_CHARACTERS\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE
- XML\_EVENT\_SPACE\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_COMMENT\_CONT
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA
- XML\_EVENT\_CDATA\_CONT

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetText0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratest\*) event text

## XmlEvGetUENdata()

Retrieves the ndata for XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION event, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter.

**Syntax**

```
oratest *XmlEvGetUENdata(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) ndata

## XmlEvGetUENdata0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated ndata for XML\_EVENT\_UE\_DECLARATION event.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetUENdata0(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

**Returns**

(oratext\*) ndata

## XmlEvGetURI()

Retrieves the URI tag for one of the following events, and also returns the length of the event as an OUT len parameter:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetURI(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 *len);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
len	OUT	length of the event name

**Returns**

(oratext\*) URI tag

## XmlEvGetURI0()

Retrieves the NULL-terminated URI tag for one of the following events:

- XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT
- XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetURI0(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

---

**Returns**

(oratext\*) URI tag

## XmlEvGetVersion()

Provides information about version specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlEvGetVersion(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

---

**Returns**

(oratext\*) version string from the XML declaration.

## XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified()

Provides information about encoding specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified(  
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```



---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

---

**Returns**

TRUE if encoding was specified in XML declaration, FALSE otherwise

## XmlEvisNamespaceAttr()

Determines if an attribute is a namespace attribute for XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlEvisNamespaceAttr(
    xmlevctx *evctx,
    ub4 index);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context
index	IN	index of the attribute

---

**Returns**

TRUE if an attribute is a namespace attribute, FALSE otherwise

## XmlEvisStandalone()

Provides information about standalone specification in XML declaration for the XML\_EVENT\_START\_DOCUMENT event.

**Syntax**

```
sword XmlEvisStandalone(
    xmlevctx *evctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Events contextt

---

**Returns**

(sword) -1 if standalone was not specified in the XML declaration, 0 if FALSE was specified for standalone, and 1 if TRUE was specified for standalone

## XmlEvNext()

Gets the next event; advances the parser.

### Syntax

```
xmlEventType XmlEvNext(  
    xmlEvctx *evctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

---

### Returns

(xmlEventType) the event

## XmlEvNextTag()

Advances the parser to the next tag event, such as XML\_EVENT\_START\_ELEMENT, XML\_EVENT\_END\_ELEMENT, and XML\_EVENT\_END\_DOCUMENT.

### Syntax

```
xmlEventType XmlEvNextTag(  
    xmlEvctx *evctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
evctx	IN	XML Event context

---

### Returns

(xmlEventType) the event

## XmlEvLoadPPDoc()

Loads a new document and sets it up for pull parsing. Prepares to start parsing the XML document from an input source in pull-parse mode. Input sources are the same as for [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#)[XmlLoadDom\(\)](#) and [XmlLoadSax\(\)](#)[XmlLoadSax\(\)](#) of [Package XML APIs for C](#). The actual parsing is driven by multiple calls to [XmlEvNext\(\)](#).

### Syntax

```
xmlErr XmlEvLoadPPDoc(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlEvctx *evctx,  
    oratext *inputType,  
    void *input,  
    ub4 inputLen,  
    oratext *inputEncoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
evctx	IN	XML Events contextt
inputType	IN	type of input, such as file, buffer, uri, stream, or stdio
input	IN	the input
inputLen	IN	input length for buffer input type
inputEncoding	IN	input encoding

### Returns

(xmlerr) the error code

## XmlEvSchemaValidate()

Validates XML documents represented by events. Initializes the stream validator.

This is an opaque method. An alternate approach would be to use the transparent [XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#)[XmlEvCreateSVCtx\(\)](#) and [XmlEvDestroySVCtx\(\)](#)[XmlEvDestroySVCtx\(\)](#).

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlEvSchemaValidate(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xsdctx *sctx,
    xmlevctx *docEvCtx,
    oratext **errmsg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
sctx	IN	Schema context
docEvCtx	IN	Event context for the document that is validated
errmsg	OUT	The error message that corresponds to the error code

**Returns**

(xmlerr) the error code

## Package Orastream for XML C APIs

Orastream APIs support handling of text and binary nodes that exceed 64K in an XML document.

The data types used by Orastream are found in [Datatypes for C](#); they include [oracheck](#), [oraerr](#), [oraprop\\_id](#), [oramemctx](#), [oraprop](#), [oraprop\\_t](#), [oraprop\\_v](#), [orastream](#), and [orastreamhdl](#).

The error codes for the Orastream interfaces are described in [Table 5-1](#).

**Table 5-1 Orastream Error Codes for XML C Implementation**

Error Code	Description
ORASTREAM_ERR_NULL_POINTER	Null pointer encountered.
ORASTREAM_ERR_BAD_STREAM	Invalid stream object.
ORASTREAM_ERR_WRONG_DIRECTION	Stream object is defined for the opposite I/O direction.
ORASTREAM_ERR_UNKNOWN_PROPERTY	Unknown creation property.
ORASTREAM_ERR_NO_DIRECTION	The I/O direction of the stream is undefined.
ORASTREAM_ERR_BI_DIRECTION	The stream direction is incorrectly defined as using both I/O directions.
ORASTREAM_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The stream is not open.
ORASTREAM_ERR_WRONG_MODE	The stream is defined for the opposite char/byte mode.
ORASTREAM_ERR_CANT_OPEN	The stream cannot be opened.
ORASTREAM_ERR_CANT_CLOSE	The stream cannot be closed.

The Orastream methods, listed in the following table, support unidirectional streams used to move data piecewise. The direction and mode of the stream is determined by the parameters that initialize the stream in the [OraStreamInit\(\)](#) method.

**Table 5-2 Summary of OraStream Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">OraStreamClose()</a>	Closes the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamHandle()</a>	Returns the handle to the stream.

**Table 5-2 (Cont.) Summary of OraStream Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">OraStreamInit()</a>	Initializes the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamIsOpen()</a>	Determines if the stream is open.
<a href="#">OraStreamOpen()</a>	Opens the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamRead()</a>	Reads bytes from the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamReadable()</a>	Determines if the stream is readable.
<a href="#">OraStreamReadChar()</a>	Reads characters from the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamSid()</a>	Sets the SID of a stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamTerm()</a>	Destroys the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamWrite()</a>	Writes bytes to the stream.
<a href="#">OraStreamWritable()</a>	Determines if the stream is writable.
<a href="#">OraStreamWriteChar()</a>	Writes characters to the stream.

---

---

**See Also:**

*Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*

---

---

## OraStreamClose()

Closes the `orastream` object.

The function is used to close the given stream by calling the 'close' callback function of the stream.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamClose(  
    orastream *stream);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>stream</code>	IN	Stream that is closed

---

## OraStreamHandle()

Returns the handle of the `orastream` object.

The handle contains the generic pointers and file descriptors.

**Syntax**

```
orastreamhdl *OraStreamHandle(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream whose handle is returned

**OraStreamInit()**

Creates and initializes a orastream object.

**Syntax**

```
orastream *OraStreamInit(
    void *sctx,
    void *sid,
    oraerr *err,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	The input context; may be NULL
sid	IN	The user-defined stream context identifier
err	OUT	The error, if any. ORAERR_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	<p>NULL-terminated list of name-value pairs of arguments that specify the properties of the new <code>orastream</code> object. These are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <code>open</code> property name is for the open function, and its value follows. <code>ORASTREAM_OPEN_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl, length)</code></li> <li>The <code>close</code> property name is for the close function, and its value follows. <code>ORASTREAM_CLOSE_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl)</code></li> <li>The <code>read</code> property name is for reading byte data from the stream to the buffer. Note that <code>nread</code> returns the number of bytes actually read. <code>ORASTREAM_READ_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl, dest, size, start, nread, eoi)</code></li> <li>The <code>write</code> property name is for writing byte data from the buffer to the stream. Note that <code>written</code> returns the number of bytes actually written. <code>ORASTREAM_WRITE_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl, src, size, written)</code></li> <li>The <code>read_char</code> property name is for reading character data from the stream to the buffer. Note that <code>nread</code> returns the number of characters actually read. <code>ORASTREAM_READ_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl, dest, size, start, nread, eoi)</code></li> <li>The <code>write_char</code> property name is for writing character data from the buffer to the stream. Note that <code>written</code> returns the number of characters actually written. <code>ORASTREAM_WRITE_F(*, sctx, sid, hdl, src, size, written)</code></li> </ul>

## OraStreamIsOpen()

Determines if the `orastream` is open. Returns `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

Note that the stream must be open to perform read and write operations.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamIsOpen(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>stream</i>	IN	The stream that should be open for reads or writes.

## OraStreamOpen()

Opens the `orastream` object.



The function opens the stream by calling the 'open' callback function of the stream. Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamOpen(
    orastream *stream,
    ubig_ora *length)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	The stream that is open
length	OUT	Optional parameter; not used

## OraStreamRead()

Reads bytes from the orastream object.

The function is used to read the data from the stream into the specified buffer. It also returns TRUE for the eoi parameter if the end of stream is reached.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamRead(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *dest,
    ubig_ora size,
    oratext **start,
    ubig_ora *nread,
    ubl *eoi);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is being read
dest	IN	The destination buffer
size	IN	The size of the data to be read
start	OUT	Pointer to the start of data being read
nread	OUT	Number of bytes actually read from the stream
eoi	OUT	Returns TRUE if end of the stream is reached; FALSE otherwise

## OraStreamReadable()

Determines if an existing `orastream` object is readable.

Returns `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamReadable(  
    orastream *stream);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>stream</code>	IN	Stream that is checked for readability

---

## OraStreamReadChar()

Reads chars from the `orastream` object.

The function is used to read the data from the stream into the specified buffer. It also returns `TRUE` for the `eoi` parameter if the end of stream is reached.

Returns `ORAERR_OK` for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamReadChar(  
    orastream *stream,  
    oratext *dest,  
    ubig_ora size,  
    oratext **start,  
    ubig_ora *nread,  
    ubl *eoi);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>stream</code>	IN	Stream that is being read
<code>dest</code>	IN	The destination buffer
<code>size</code>	IN	The size of the data to be read
<code>start</code>	OUT	Pointer to the start of data being read
<code>nread</code>	OUT	Number of characters actually read from the stream
<code>eoi</code>	OUT	Returns <code>TRUE</code> if end of the stream is reached; <code>FALSE</code> otherwise

---

## OraStreamSid()

Assigns an SID to an existing orastream object. Returns the old SID through the OUT parameter osid.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamSid(
    orastream *stream,
    void *sid,
    void **osid);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	The stream whose SID is changed
sid	IN	The new SID
osid	OUT	The previous SID of the stream

## OraStreamTerm()

Destroys a orastream object and frees its associated memory.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamTerm(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is destroyed

## OraStreamWrite()

Writes bytes to the orastream object.

The number of bytes actually read are stored by the OUT parameter nwrote.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamWrite(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *src,
    ubig_ora size,
    ubig_ora *nwrote);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream where the data is written
src	IN	Buffer from which the data is written
size	IN	Size of data to be written
nwrote	OUT	Number of bytes written to the stream

## OraStreamWritable()

Determines if an existing orastream object is writable.

Returns TRUE or FALSE.

### Syntax

```
boolean OraStreamWritable(
    orastream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream that is checked for writability.

## OraStreamWriteChar()

Writes chars to the orastream object.

The number of characters actually written are stored by the OUT parameter nwrote.

Returns ORAERR\_OK for success, or the error code for failure.

### Syntax

```
oraerr OraStreamWriteChar(
    orastream *stream,
    oratext *src,
    ubig_ora size,
    ubig_ora *nwrote);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	Stream where the data is written
src	IN	Buffer from which the data is written

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>In/Out</b>	<b>Description</b>
size	IN	Size of data to be written
nwrote	OUT	Number of characters written to the stream

---



---

## Package Range for XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Range interface for XML C APIs.

**Table 6-1 Summary of Range Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<code>XmlDomCreateRange()</code>	Create Range object.
<code>XmlDomRangeClone()</code>	Clone a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeCloneContents()</code>	Clone contents selected by a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeCollapse()</code>	Collapse range to either start point or end point.
<code>XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints()</code>	Compare boundary points of two ranges.
<code>XmlDomRangeDeleteContents()</code>	Delete content selected by a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeDetach()</code>	Detach a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeExtractContents()</code>	Extract contents selected by a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed()</code>	Return whether the range is collapsed.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor()</code>	Return deepest common ancestor node of two boundary points.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetDetached()</code>	Return whether the range is detached.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer()</code>	Return range end container node.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset()</code>	Return range end offset.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer()</code>	Return range start container node.
<code>XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset()</code>	Return range start offset.
<code>XmlDomRangeIsConsistent()</code>	Return whether the range is consistent.
<code>XmlDomRangeSelectNode()</code>	Select a node as a range.
<code>XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents()</code>	Define range to select node contents.
<code>XmlDomRangeSetEnd()</code>	Set the end point.
<code>XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore()</code>	Set the end point before a node.
<code>XmlDomRangeSetStart()</code>	Set the start point.

**Table 6-1 (Cont.) Summary of Range Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()</a>	Set the start point after a node.
<a href="#">XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()</a>	Set the start point before a node.

## XmlDomCreateRange()

The only one method of DocumentRange interface, used to create a Range object.

### Syntax

```
xmlrange* XmlDomCreateRange(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	existing NodeIterator, or NULL to allocate new
doc	IN	document to which the new Range is attached

### Returns

(xmlrange \*) original or new Range object.

## XmlDomRangeClone()

Clone a Range. Clones the range without affecting the content selected by the original range. Returns NULL if an error.

### Syntax

```
xmlrange* XmlDomRangeClone(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object



Parameter	In/Out	Description
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlrange \*) new range that clones the old one

## XmlDomRangeCloneContents()

Clone contents selected by a range. Clones but does not delete contents selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets `retval` to an error code if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeCloneContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) cloned contents

## XmlDomRangeCollapse()

Collapses the range to either start point or end point. The point where it is collapsed to is assumed to be a valid point in the document which this range is attached to.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeCollapse(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    boolean tostart);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
range	IN	range object
tostart	IN	indicates whether to collapse to start (TRUE) or to end (FALSE)

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

**XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints()**

Compares two boundary points of two different ranges. Returns -1, 0, 1 depending on whether the corresponding boundary point of the range (range) is before, equal, or after the corresponding boundary point of the second range (srange). It returns ~ (int) 0 if two ranges are attached to two different documents or if one of them is detached.

**Syntax**

```
sb4 XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlcmphow how,
    xmlrange *srange,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
how	IN	xmlcmphow value; how to compare
srange	IN	range object with which to compare
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

---

**Returns**

(sb4) strcmp-like comparison result

## XmlDomRangeDeleteContents()

Deletes content selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets `retval` to an error code if an error.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeDeleteContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>range</code>	IN	range object

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeDetach()

Detaches the range from the document and places it (`range`) in invalid state.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeDetach(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>range</code>	IN	range object

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeExtractContents()

Extract contents selected by a range. Clones and deletes contents selected by a range. Performs the range consistency check and sets `retval` to an error code if an error.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeExtractContents(
    xmlctx *xctx,
```

```
xmlrange *range,  
xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) extracted

## XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed()

Returns TRUE if the range is collapsed and is not detached, otherwise returns FALSE.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed(  
xmlctx *xctx,  
xmlrange *range,  
xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

---

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if the range is collapsed, FALSE otherwise

## XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor()

Returns deepest common ancestor node of two boundary points of the range if the range is not detached, otherwise returns NULL. It is assumed that the range is in a consistent state.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor(  
xmlctx *xctx,
```

```
xmlrange *range,
xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) deepest common ancestor node [or NULL]

## XmlDomRangeGetDetached()

Return whether the range is detached. Returns TRUE if the range is detached and is not NULL. Otherwise returns FALSE.

### Syntax

```
ub1 XmlDomRangeGetDetached(
xmlctx *xctx,
xmlrange *range);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

### Returns

(ub1) TRUE if the range is detached, FALSE otherwise

## XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer()

Returns range end container node if the range is not detached, otherwise returns NULL.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer(
xmlctx *xctx,
xmlrange *range,
xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) range end container node [or NULL]

## XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset()

Returns range end offset if the range is not detached, otherwise returns  $\sim(\text{ub4})0$  [the maximum ub4 value].

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(ub4) range end offset [or ub4 maximum]

## XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer()

Returns range start container node if the range is valid and is not detached, otherwise returns NULL.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) range start container node

## XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset()

Returns range start offset if the range is not detached, otherwise returns  $\sim(\text{ub4})0$  [the maximum ub4 value].

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

**Returns**

(ub4) range start offset [or ub4 maximum]

## XmlDomRangeIsConsistent()

Return whether the range is consistent. Returns TRUE if the range is consistent: both points are under the same root and the start point is before or equal to the end point. Otherwise returns FALSE.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlDomRangeIsConsistent(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
xerr	OUT	numeric return code

---

**Returns**

(ub1) TRUE if the range is consistent, FALSE otherwise

## XmlDomRangeSelectNode()

Sets the range end point and start point so that the parent node of this node becomes the container node, and the offset is the offset of this node among the children of its parent. The range becomes collapsed. It is assumed that the node is a valid node of its document. If the range is detached, it is ignored, and the range becomes attached.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSelectNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlrange *range,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents()

Sets the range start point to the start of the node contents and the end point to the end of the node contents. It is assumed that the node is a valid document node. If the range is detached, it is ignored, and the range becomes attached.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents(  
    xmlctx *xctx,
```



```
xmlrange *range,
xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSetEnd()

Sets the range end point. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the end is set to be at a position before the start, the range is collapsed to that position. Returns xmlerr value. according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the start point of the range is a valid start point.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetEnd(
xmlctx *xctx,
xmlrange *range,
xmlnode *node,
ub4 offset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node
offset	IN	ending offset

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore()

Sets the range end point before a node. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the before node sets the end to be at a position before the start, the range is collapsed to new position. Returns xmlerr value according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the start point of the range is a valid start point.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlrange *range,  
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSetStart()

Sets the range start point. If it has a root container other than the current one for the range, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the start is set to be at a position after the end, the range is collapsed to that position. Returns xmlerr value according to the description where this type is defined. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetStart(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlrange *range,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    ub4 offset);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
node	IN	XML node
offset	IN	starting offset

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter()

Sets the range start point after a node. If it has a root container other than the current one, the range is collapsed to the new position. If the previous node sets the start after the end, the range is collapsed to a new position. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore()

Sets the range start point before a node. If it has a root container other than the current one, the range is collapsed to the new position with offset 0. If the previous node sets the start after the end, the range is collapsed to a new position. It is assumed that the end point of the range is a valid end point.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlrange *range,
    xmlnode *node);
```

---

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>In/Out</b>	<b>Description</b>
xctx	IN	XML context
range	IN	range object
node	IN	XML node

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric return code

## Package SAX for XML C APIs

SAX is a standard interface for event-based XML parsing, developed collaboratively by the members of the XML-DEV mailing list. To use SAX, an `xmlsaxcb` structure is initialized with function pointers and passed to one of the `xmlLoadSax` calls. A pointer to a user-defined context structure is also provided, and will be passed to each SAX function.

For event-based schema validation APIs, refer to [Package Event APIs for C](#).

The following table summarizes the methods available through the SAX interface for XML C APIs.

**Table 7-1 Summary of SAX Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSaxAttributeDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of an attribute's declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxCDATA()</a>	Receives SAX notification of CDATA. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxCharacters()</a>	Receives SAX notification of character data
<a href="#">XmlSaxComment()</a>	Receives SAX notification of a comment.
<a href="#">XmlSaxElementDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of an element's declaration. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxEndDocument()</a>	Receives SAX end-of-document notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxEndElement()</a>	Receives SAX end-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxNotationDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of a notation declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxPI()</a>	Receives SAX notification of a processing instruction.
<a href="#">XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of a parsed entity declaration. Oracle extension.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartDocument()</a>	Receives SAX start-of-document notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartElement()</a>	Receives SAX start-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxStartElementNS()</a>	Receives SAX namespace-aware start-of-element notification.
<a href="#">XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of an unparsed entity declaration.
<a href="#">XmlSaxWhitespace()</a>	Receives SAX notification of ignorable (whitespace) data.

**Table 7-1 (Cont.) Summary of SAX Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSaxXmlDecl()</a>	Receives SAX notification of an XML declaration. Oracle extension.

---

## XmlSaxAttributeDecl()

This event marks an element declaration in the DTD. The element's name and content will be in the data encoding. Note that an attribute may be declared before the element it belongs to!

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxAttributeDecl(  
    void *ctx,  
    oratext *elem,  
    oratext *attr,  
    oratext *body);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
elem	IN	element for which the attribute is declared; data encoding
attr	IN	attribute's name; data encoding
body	IN	body of an attribute declaration

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] for success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxAttributeDecl\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSaxBeginGen()

This call creates an XML generation context from the specified XML meta context. This context is used by the SAX calls to generate an incremental XML document.

### Syntax

```
void *XmlSaxBeginGen(  
    XmlCtx *xctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	the XML meta contextt

---

## XmlSaxCDATA()

This event handles CDATA, as distinct from Text. If no XmlSaxCDATA callback is provided, the Text callback will be invoked. The data will be in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes. See also XmlSaxWhitespace, which receiving notification about ignorable (whitespace formatting) character data.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxCDATA(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *ch,
    size_t len);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to CDATA; data encoding
len	IN	length of CDATA, in characters

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSaxWhitespace\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSaxCharacters()

This event marks character data, either Text or CDATA. If an XmlSaxCDATA callback is provided, then CDATA will be send to that instead; with no XmlSaxCDATA callback, both Text and CDATA go to the XmlSaxCharacters callback. The data will be in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes. See also XmlSaxWhitespace, which receiving notification about ignorable (whitespace formatting) character data.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxCharacters(
    void *ctx,
```

## XmlSaxComment()

---

```
orertext *ch,  
size_t len);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to data; data encoding
len	IN	length of data, in characters

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] for success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSaxWhitespace\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSaxComment()

This event marks a comment in the XML document. The comment's data will be in the data encoding. Oracle extension, not in SAX standard.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxComment(  
void *ctx,  
orertext *data);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
data	IN	comment's data; data encoding

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] for success

## XmlSaxElementDecl()

This event marks an element declaration in the DTD. The element's name and content will be in the data encoding.



**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxElementDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *content);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	element's name
content	IN	element's context model

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxAttributeDecl\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxEndDocument()

The last SAX event, called once for each document, indicating the end of the document. Matching event is XmlSaxStartDocument.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxEndDocument(
    void *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxStartDocument\(\)](#)

## XmlSaxEndElement()

This event marks the close of an element; it matches the `XmlSaxStartElement` or `XmlSaxStartElementNS` events. The name is the `tagName` of the element (which may be a qualified name for namespace-aware elements) and is in the data encoding.

## XmlSaxEndGen()

Completes the generation of an incrementally constructed XML document, and returns it to the application.

### Syntax

```
orastream *XmlSaxEndGen(  
    void *genCtx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>genCtx</code>	IN	the generation context used to create the XML document; see <a href="#">XmlSaxBeginGen()</a> / <a href="#">XmlSaxBeginGen()</a>

### Return

(`orastream*`) the stream containing the generated XML document

## XmlSaxNotationDecl()

The event marks the declaration of a notation in the DTD. The notation's name, public ID, and system ID will all be in the data encoding. Both IDs are optional and may be `NULL`.

## XmlSaxPI()

This event marks a `ProcessingInstruction`. The `ProcessingInstructions` target and data will be in the data encoding. There is always a target, but the data may be `NULL`.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxPI(  
    void *ctx,  
    oratext *target,  
    oratext *data);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>ctx</code>	IN	user's SAX context
<code>target</code>	IN	PI's target; data encoding

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
data	IN	PI's data as data encoding, or NULL

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

## XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl()

Marks an parsed entity declaration in the DTD. The parsed entity's name, public ID, system ID, and notation name will all be in the data encoding.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value,
    oratext *pubId,
    oratext *sysId,
    boolean general);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	entity's name; data encoding
value	IN	entity's value; data encoding
pubId	IN	entity's public ID as data encoding, or NULL
sysId	IN	entity's system ID; data encoding
general	IN	TRUE if general entity, FALSE if parameter entity

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSaxStartDocument()

The first SAX event, called once for each document, indicating the start of the document. Matching event is `XmlSaxEndDocument`.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxStartDocument(  
    void *ctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, `XMLERR_OK [0]` for success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxEndDocument\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSaxStartElement()

This event marks the start of an element. Note this is the original SAX 1 non-namespace-aware version; `XmlSaxStartElementNS` is the SAX 2 namespace-aware version. If both are registered, only the NS version will be called. The element's name will be in the data encoding, as are all the attribute parts. See the functions in the `NamedNodeMap` interface for operating on the attributes map. The matching function is `XmlSaxEndElement` (there is no namespace aware version of this function).

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxStartElement(  
    void *ctx,  
    oratext *name,  
    xmlnodelist *attrs);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	element's name; data encoding
attrs	IN	<code>NamedNodeMap</code> of element's attributes

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxEndElement\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#) and [XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#) in Package DOM APIs for C

## XmlSaxStartElementNS()

This event marks the start of an element. Note this is the new SAX 2 namespace-aware version; XmlSaxStartElement is the SAX 1 non-namespace-aware version. If both are registered, only the NS version will be called. The element's qualified name, local name, and namespace URI will be in the data encoding, as are all the attribute parts. See the functions in the NamedNodeMap interface for operating on the attributes map. The matching function is XmlSaxEndElement (there is no namespace aware version of this function).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxStartElementNS(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *local,
    oratext *nsp,
    xmlodelist *attrs);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
qname	IN	element's qualified name; data encoding
local	IN	element's namespace local name; data encoding
nsp	IN	element's namespace URI; data encoding
attrs	IN	NodeList of element's attributes, or NULL

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxStartElement\(\)](#), [XmlSaxEndElement\(\)](#), [XmlDomGetNodeMapLength\(\)](#) and [XmlDomRemoveNamedItem\(\)](#) in Package DOM APIs for C

## XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl()

Marks an unparsed entity declaration in the DTD, see `XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl` for the parsed entity version. The unparsed entity's name, public ID, system ID, and notation name will all be in the data encoding.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *pubId,
    oratext *sysId,
    oratext *note);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
name	IN	entity's name; data encoding
pubId	IN	entity's public ID as data encoding, or NULL
sysId	IN	entity's system ID; data encoding
note	IN	entity's notation name; data encoding

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSaxWhitespace()

This event marks ignorable whitespace data such as newlines, and indentation between lines. The matching function is `XmlSaxCharacters`, which receives notification of normal character data. The data is in the data encoding, and the returned length is in characters, not bytes.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSaxWhitespace(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *ch,
    size_t len);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
ch	IN	pointer to data; data encoding
len	IN	length of data, in characters

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] for success

**See Also:**

[XmlSaxCharacters\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSaxXmlDecl()

This event marks an XML declaration. The `XmlSaxStartDocument` event is always first; if this callback is registered and an `XMLDecl` exists, it will be the second event. The encoding flag says whether an encoding was specified. Since the document's own encoding specification may be overridden (or wrong), and the input will be converted to the data encoding anyway, the actual encoding specified in the document is not provided. For the standalone flag, -1 will be returned if it was not specified, otherwise 0 for FALSE, 1 for TRUE.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSaxXmlDecl(
    void *ctx,
    oratext *version,
    boolean encoding,
    sword standalone);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	user's SAX context
version	IN	version string from XMLDecl; data encoding
encoding	IN	whether encoding was specified
standalone	IN	value of the standalone document; < 0 if not specified

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] for success



---

## Package Schema for XML C APIs

This C implementation of the XML schema validator follows the W3C XML Schema specification, rev REC-xmlschema-1-20010502. It implements the required behavior of a schema validator for multiple schema documents to be assembled into a schema. This resulting schema can be used to validate a specific instance document.

For event-based schema validation, see the methods documented in [Package Event APIs for C](#).

The following table summarizes the methods available through the Schema interface for XML C APIs.

**Table 8-1 Summary of Schema Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSchemaClean()</a>	Cleans up loaded schemas in a schema context and recycle the schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaCreate()</a>	Creates and returns a schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaDestroy()</a>	Destroys a schema context.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaErrorWhere()</a>	Returns the location where an error occurred.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaLoad()</a>	Loads a schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaLoadedList()</a>	Returns the size and/or list of loaded schema documents.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler()</a>	Sets an error message handler and its associated context in a schema context
<a href="#">XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions()</a>	Sets option(s) to be used in the next validation session.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaTargetNamespace()</a>	Returns target namespace of a given schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaUnload()</a>	Unloads a schema document.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaValidate()</a>	Validates an element node against a schema.
<a href="#">XmlSchemaVersion()</a>	Returns the version of this schema implementation.

### XmlSchemaCreate()

Return a schema context to be used in other validator APIs. This needs to be paired with an `XmlSchemaDestroy`.

**Syntax**

```
xsdctx *XmlSchemaCreate(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlerr *err,  
    list);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	returned error code
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

---

**Returns**

(xsdctx \*) schema context

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaDestroy\(\)](#), [XmlCreate\(\)](#) in [Package XML APIs for C](#)

---

## XmlSchemaDestroy()

Destroy a schema context and free up all its resources.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlSchemaDestroy(  
    xsdctx *sctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context to be freed

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSchemaErrorWhere()

Returns the location (line#, path) where an error occurred.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaErrorWhere(  
    xsdctx *sctx,
```

```
ub4 *line,
oratext **path);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
line	IN/OUT	line number where error occurred
path	IN/OUT	URL or filesystem where error occurred

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSchemaLoad()

Load up a schema document to be used in the next validation session. Schema documents can be incrementally loaded into a schema context as long as every loaded schema document is valid. When the last loaded schema turns out to be invalid, you need to clean up the schema context by calling [XmlSchemaClean\(\)](#) and reload everything all over again including the last schema with appropriate correction.

Given a schema document, this function converts the DOM representation into an internal schema representation. The schema document can be provided as a URI or directly a DOM representation. In the URI case, this function reads the input stream and builds a DOM representation of the schema before converting it into internal representation. In the DOM case, the application can provide a DOM representation of the schema, which will be used to create the internal schema representation.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaLoad(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    oratext *uri,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
uri	IN	URL of schema document; compiler encoding

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaUnload\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSchemaLoadedList()

Return only the size of loaded schema documents if *list* is NULL. If *list* is not NULL, a list of URL pointers are returned in the user-provided pointer buffer. Note that its user's responsibility to provide a buffer with big enough size.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlSchemaLoadedList(  
    xsdctx *sctx,  
    oratext **list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>sctx</i>	IN	schema context
<i>list</i>	IN	address of pointer buffer

---

**Returns**

(ub4) list size

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaLoad\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaUnload\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler()

Sets an error message handler and its associated context in a schema context. To retrieve useful location information on errors, the address of the schema context must be provided in the error handler context.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler(  
    xsdctx *sctx,
```

```
XML_ERRMSG_F(
    (*errhdl),
    ectx,
    msg,
    err),
void *errctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
errhdl	IN	error message handler
errctx	IN	error handler context

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code

### See Also:

[XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaErrorWhere\(\)](#), and [XML\\_ERRMSG\\_F\(\)](#) in [Package Callback APIs for C](#)

## XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions()

Set options to be used in the next validation session. Previously set options will remain effective until they are overwritten or reset.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable argument

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**[XmlSchemaValidate\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSchemaTargetNamespace()

Return target namespace of a given schema document identified by its URI. All currently loaded schema documents can be queried. Currently loaded schema documents include the ones loaded through `XmlSchemaLoads` and the ones loaded through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` hints.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlSchemaTargetNamespace(  
    xsdctx *sctx,  
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	XML context
uri	IN	URL of the schema document to be queried

---

**Returns**

(`oratext *`) target namespace string; NULL if given document not

**See Also:**[XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSchemaUnload()

Unload a schema document from the validator. All previously loaded schema documents will remain loaded until they are unloaded. To unload all loaded schema documents, set URI to be NULL (this is equivalent to `XmlSchemaClean`). Note that all children schemas associated with the given schema are also unloaded. In this implementation, it only support the following scenarios:

- load, load, ...
- load, load, load, unload, unload, unload, clean, and then repeat.

It doesn't not support: load, load, unload, load, ....

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaUnload(  
    xsdctx *sctx,  
    oratext *uri,  
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
uri	IN	URL of the schema document; compiler encoding
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable argument

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSchemaLoad\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaLoadedList\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSchemaValidate()

Validates an element node against a schema. Schemas used in current session consists of all schema documents specified through `XmlSchemaLoad` and provided as hint(s) through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` in the instance document. After the invocation of this routine, all loaded schema documents remain loaded and can be queried by `XmlSchemaLoadedList`. However, they will remain inactive. In the next validation session, inactive schema documents can be activated by specifying them through `XmlSchemaLoad` or providing them as hint(s) through `schemaLocation` or `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` in the new instance document. To unload a schema document and all its descendants (documents included or imported in a nested manner), use `XmlSchemaUnload`.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSchemaValidate(
    xsdctx *sctx,
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context
xctx	IN	XML top-level context
elem	IN	element node in the doc, to be validated

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSchemaVersion()

Return the version of this schema implementation.

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlSchemaVersion();
```

**Returns**

(orertext \*) version string [compiler encoding]

## XmlSchemaClean()

Clean up loaded schemas in a schema context and recycle the schema context.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlSchemaClean(  
    xsdctx *sctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
sctx	IN	schema context to be cleaned

---

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSchemaCreate\(\)](#), [XmlSchemaDestroy\(\)](#)

---

---



## Package SOAP for XML C APIs

SOAP is a lightweight protocol for exchange of information in a decentralized, distributed environment. It is an XML based protocol that consists of three parts: an envelope that defines a framework for describing what is in a message and how to process it, a set of encoding rules for expressing instances of application-defined datatypes, and a convention for representing remote procedure calls and responses.

Attachments are not allowed in Soap 1.1. In Soap 1.2, body may not have other elements if Fault is present.

The structure of a SOAP message is illustrated in the following section of code.

```
[SOAP message (XML document)
  [SOAP envelope
    [SOAP header?
      element*
    ]
    [SOAP body
      (element* | Fault)?
    ]
  ]
]
```

The following table summarizes the methods available through the SOAP package for XML C APIs.

**Table 9-1 Summary of SOAP Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddBodyElement()</a>	Adds an element to a SOAP message body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddFaultReason()</a>	Adds additional Reason to Fault.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail()</a>	Adds additional child to Fault Detail.
<a href="#">XmlSoapAddHeaderElement()</a>	Adds an element to a SOAP header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCall()</a>	Sends a SOAP message then waits for a reply.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateConnection()</a>	Creates a SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateCtx()</a>	Creates and returns a SOAP context.
<a href="#">XmlSoapCreateMsg()</a>	Creates and returns an empty SOAP message.
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyConnection()</a>	Destroys a SOAP connection object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyCtx()</a>	Destroys a SOAP context.

**Table 9-1 (Cont.) Summary of SOAP Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlSoapDestroyMsg()</a>	Destroys a SOAP message created with <a href="#">XmlSoapCreateMsg</a> .
<a href="#">XmlSoapError()</a>	Gets a human readable error code.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetBody()</a>	Return a SOAP message's envelope body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetBodyElement()</a>	Gets an element from a SOAP body.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetEnvelope()</a>	Returns a SOAP part's envelope.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetFault()</a>	Returns Fault code, reason, and details.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetHeader()</a>	Returns a SOAP message's envelope header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetHeaderElement()</a>	Gets an element from a SOAP header.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand()</a>	Gets mustUnderstand attribute from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetReasonLang()</a>	Gets the language of a reason with the specified index.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetReasonNum()</a>	Determines the number of reasons in Fault element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetRelay()</a>	Gets Relay attribute from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapGetRole()</a>	Gets role from SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapHasFault()</a>	Determines if SOAP message contains Fault object.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetFault()</a>	Sets Fault in SOAP message.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand()</a>	Sets mustUnderstand attribute for SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetRelay()</a>	Sets Relay attribute for a SOAP header element.
<a href="#">XmlSoapSetRole()</a>	Sets role for SOAP header element.

## XmlSoapAddBodyElement()

Adds an element to a SOAP message body. Sets the numeric error code.

### Syntax

```
xmlElemnode *XmlSoapAddBodyElement(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *uri,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
qname	IN	QName of element to add
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to add
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) created element

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddHeaderElement\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlSoapAddFaultReason()

Add additional Reason to Fault. The same reason text may be provided in different languages. When the fault is created, the primary language/reason is added at that time; use this function to add additional translations of the reason.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapAddFaultReason(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    ratext *reason,
    oratext *lang);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
reason	IN	Human-readable fault Reason
lang	IN	Language of reason

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapSetFault\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail()

Adds an additional child to Fault Detail. XmlSoapSetFault allows for creation of a Deatail element with only one child. Extra children could be added with this function.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlelemnode *sub);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
sub	IN	subdetail tree

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetReasonLang\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapAddHeaderElement()

Adds an element to a SOAP header.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapAddHeaderElement(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *uri,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
qname	IN	QName of element to add
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to add
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) created element

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#), [XmlSoapGetHeaderElement\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapCall()

Send a SOAP message over a connection and wait for the response; the message reply (an XML document) is parsed and returned as a SOAP message (equivalent to a DOM).

The message buffer is first used to serialize the outgoing message; if it's too small (overflow occurs), xerr gets XMLERR\_SAVE\_OVERFLOW and NULL is returned. The same buffer is then re-used to receive the replied SOAP message.

Opening the connection object is expected to cause an active SOAP handler to appear on the end-point; how this happens is up to the user. For HTTP, the URL should invoke a cgi-bin, or detect the application/soap+xml content-type.

**Syntax**

```
xmlDocnode *XmlSoapCall(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlsoapcon *con,
    xmlDocnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
con	IN	SOAP connection object
msg	IN	SOAP message to send
xerr	IN	numeric code of failure

### Returns

(xmlDocNode \*) returned message, or NULL on failure with xerr set

---



---

#### See Also:

[XmlSoapCreateMsg\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCreateConnection\(\)](#),  
[XmlSoapDestroyConnection\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlSoapCreateConnection()

Create a SOAP connection object, specifying the binding (transport) and endpoint. The binding is an enum of type xmlsoapbind, and the endpoint depends on the binding.

Currently only HTTP binding is supported, and the endpoint is a URL. That URL should be active, i.e. a cgi-bin script or some mechanism to trigger SOAP message processing based on the Content-type of the incoming message ("application/soap+xml").

To control the HTTP access method (GET or POST), use the web-method property named XMLSOAP\_PROP\_WEB\_METHOD which can have possible values XMLSOAP\_WEB\_METHOD\_GET and XMLSOAP\_WEB\_METHOD\_POST.

(conbuf, consiz) is the connection buffer used with LPU; for sending, it contains only the HTTP header, but on reception it holds the entire reply, including HTTP header and the full SOAP body. If no buffer is provided, one will be allocated for you. If size is zero, the default size (64K) will be used.

(msgbuf, msgsiz) is the message buffer used to form SOAP messages for sending. It needs to be large enough to contain the largest message which will be sent. If no buffer is specified, one will be allocated for you. If the size is zero, the default size (64K) will be used.

Two buffers are needed for sending since the SOAP message needs to be formed first in order to determine it's size; then, the HTTP header can be formed, since the Content-Length is now known.

### Syntax

```
xmlsoapcon *XmlSoapCreateConnection(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlerr *xerr,
    xmlsoapbind bind,
    void *endp,
```

```

    oratext *conbuf,
    ubig_ora consiz,
    oratext *msgbuf,
    ubig_ora msgsiz,
    ...);

```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
xerr	OUT	numeric error code on failure
bind	IN	connection binding
endp	IN	connection endpoint
conbuf	IN/OUT	connection buffer (or NULL to have one allocated)
consiz	IN	size of connection buffer (or 0 for default size)
msgbuf	IN/OUT	message buffer (or NULL to have one allocated)
msgsiz	IN	size of message buffer (or 0 for default size)
...	IN	additional HTTP headers to set, followed by NULL

### Returns

(xmlsoapcon \*) connect object, or NULL on error with xerr set

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSoapDestroyConnection\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCall\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapCreateCtx()

Creates and returns a SOAP context. This context must be passed to all XmlSoap APIs. Note the name provided should be unique and is used to identify the context when debugging. Options are specified as (name, value) pairs, ending with a NULL, same as for XmlCreate. If no options are desired, the NULL is still needed. Options are: debug\_level (enables SOAP debug output to stderr), numeric level (the higher the level, the more detailed extensive the output), 0 for no debug (this is the default setting).

**Syntax**

```
xmlsoapctx *XmlSoapCreateCtx(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *xerr,
    oratext *name,
    ...);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xerr	OUT	error return code on failure
name	IN	name of context; used for debugging
...	IN	options, as (name, value) pairs, followed by NULL

**Returns**

(xmlsoapctx \*) SOAP context, or NULL on failure (w/xerr set)

---



---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapDestroyCtx\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlSoapCreateMsg()

Creates and returns an empty SOAP message. The SOAP message will consist of an Envelope. The Envelope contains an empty Header and Body. A SOAP message is an XML document represented by a DOM, and is no different from any other XML document. All DOM operations are valid on the document, but be sure not to harm the overall structure. Changes should be restricted to creating and modifying elements inside the Header and Body.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlSoapCreateMsg(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
xerr	OUT	error retrun code on failure



**Returns**

(xmlDocNode \*) SOAP message, or NULL on failure (w/xerr set)

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapDestroyMsg\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapDestroyConnection()

Destroys a SOAP connection object made with XmlSoapCreateConnection and frees all allocated resources.

**Syntax**

```
xmlErr XmlSoapDestroyConnection(
    xmlSoapCtx *ctx,
    xmlSoapCon *con);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
con	IN	SOAP connection

**Returns**

(xmlErr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapCreateConnection\(\)](#), [XmlSoapCall\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapDestroyCtx()

Destroys a SOAP context created with XmlSoapCreateCtx. All memory allocated will be freed, and all connections closed.

**Syntax**

```
xmlErr XmlSoapDestroyCtx(
    xmlSoapCtx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapCreateCtx\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapDestroyMsg()

Destroys a SOAP message created with XmlSoapCreateMsg; this is the same as calling XmlFreeDocument.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapDestroyMsg(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP connection
msg	IN	SOAP message

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapCreateMsg\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapError()

Retrieves human readable representation of the error code. Optionally, retrieves the information about the error code of the underlying layer.

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlSoapError(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlsoapcon *con,
    xmlerr err,
    uword *suberr,
    orertext **submsg);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
con	IN	Connection about which additional info is requested
err	IN	Error code for which human readable information will be returned.
suberr	OUT	Error code from con
submsg	OUT	Human readable information about con error

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) error code

## XmlSoapGetBody()

Returns a SOAP message's envelope body.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetBody(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xmlerr	IN/OUT	error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP Body

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetHeader\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetBodyElement()

Gets an element from a SOAP body.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetBodyElement(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to get
local	IN	Local name of element to get
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) named element, or NULL on error

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSoapGetEnvelope()

Returns a SOAP part's envelope

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetEnvelope(  
    mlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

### Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP envelope

## XmlSoapGetFault()

Returns Fault code, reason, and details. Fetches the Fault information and returns through user variables. NULL may be supplied for any part which is not needed. For lang, if the pointed-to variable is NULL, it will be set to the default language (that of the first reason).

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext **code,
    oratext **reason,
    oratext **lang,
    oratext **node,
    oratext **role,
    xmlelemnode **detail);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
code	OUT	Code (1.2), faultcode (1.1)
reason	OUT	Human-readable fault Reason (1.2), faultreason (1.1)
lang	IN	Desired language for reason (1.2), not used ( NULL in 1.1)
node	OUT	Fault node
role	OUT	Role: next, none, or ultimate receiver. Not used in 1.1
detail	OUT	User-defined details

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapSetFault\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetHeader()

Returns a SOAP message's envelope header.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetHeader(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xerr	IN/OUT	error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlelemnode \*) SOAP header

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetBody\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetHeaderElement()

Gets an element from a SOAP header. Sets a numeric error code.

**Syntax**

```
xmlelemnode *XmlSoapGetHeaderElement(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *local,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
uri	IN	Namespace URI of element to get
local	IN	Local name of element to get
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

### Returns

(xmlelemnode \*) named element, or NULL on error

### See Also:

[XmlSoapAddHeaderElement\(\)](#), [XmlSoapGetBodyElement\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand()

Gets mustUnderstand attribute from SOAP header element. The absence of this attribute is not an error and treated as value FALSE. To indicate the absence of an attribute, the error code XMLERR\_SOAP\_NO\_MUST\_UNDERSTAND is returned in this case, XMLERR\_OK (0) is returned if the attribute is present. Other appropriate error codes might be returned. User supplied mustUnderstand value is set accordingly.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean *mustUnderstand);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element
mustUnderstand	OUT	mustUnderstand value, TRUE FALSE

**Returns**

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#), [XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetReasonLang()

Gets the language of a reason with a particular index.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetReasonLang(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg,  
    ub4 index,  
    oratext **lang);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>ctx</code>	IN	SOAP context
<code>msg</code>	IN	SOAP message
<code>indx</code>	IN	Index of fault reason
<code>lang</code>	IN	Reason language

---

**Returns**

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#), [XmlSoapHasFault\(\)](#), [XmlSoapGetReasonNum\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetReasonNum()

Determines the number of reasons in Fault element. Returns 0 if Fault is not present.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlSoapGetReasonNum(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *msg);
```



---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message

---

**Returns**

(ub4 \*) #num reasons

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#), [XmlSoapHasFault\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetRelay()

Gets Relay attribute from SOAP header element.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetRelay(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    boolean *Relay);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element
Relay	OUT	Relay value

---

**Returns**

xmlerr numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddBodyElement\(\)](#), [XmlSoapSetRelay\(\)](#)

---

## XmlSoapGetRole()

Gets role from SOAP header element. If the element has no role, XMLERR\_SOAP\_NO\_ROLE is returned, otherwise XMLERR\_OK (0) is returned and the

user's role is set accordingly. if the element has no role, then according to the standard, the user's role is set to XMLSOAP\_ROLE\_ULI.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapGetRole(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlsoaprole *role);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN	SOAP header element
role	OUT	Role value

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

#### See Also:

[XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#), [XmlSoapSetRole\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapHasFault()

Determines if SOAP message contains Fault object.

### Syntax

```
boolean XmlSoapHasFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN	SOAP message
xerr	IN/OUT	Error code

### Returns

(boolean) TRUE if there's a Fault, FALSE if not

**See Also:**[XmlSoapGetFault\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetFault()

Sets Fault in SOAP message.

- In version 1.2, only one Fault is allowed for each message, and it must be the only child of the Body. If the Body has children, they are first removed and freed. The Fault is then added with children code - "env:Code" (required), reason - "env:Reason" (required), node - "env:Node" (optional), role - "env:role"(optional), and detail - "env:Detail" (optional). The primary-language reason should be added first; calls to XmlSoapGetFault which pass a NULL language will pick this reason. Detail is the user-defined subtree to be spliced into the Fault.
- In version 1.1, only one Fault is allowed per message. If the Body already has Fault, it is first removed and freed. The Fault is then added with children code - "faultcode" (required), reason - "faultstring" (required), node - "faultactor" (optional), and detail - "detail" (optional). Detail is the user-defined subtree to be spliced into the Fault. role and lang are not used in ver 1.1

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetFault(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmldocnode *msg,
    oratext *node,
    oratext *code,
    oratext *reason,
    oratext *lang,
    oratext *role,
    xmlelemnode *detail);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
msg	IN/OUT	SOAP message
node	IN	URI of SOAP node which faulted, Node (1.2), faultactor(1.1)
code	IN	Code (1.2), faultcode (1.1)
reason	IN	Human-readable fault Reason (1.2), faultreason (1.1)
lang	IN	Language of reason (1.2), unused (1.1)

Parameter	In/Out	Description
role	IN	URI representing role, Role (1.2), unused (1.1)
detail	IN	detail elements (user-defined)

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapAddFaultReason\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand()

Sets mustUnderstand attribute for SOAP header element. According to the standard, if the value is FALSE, the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand(  
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,  
    xmlelemnode *elem,  
    boolean mustUnderstand);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
mustUnderstand	IN	mustUnderstand value, TRUE FALSE

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapSetRole\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlSoapSetRelay()

Sets Relay attribute for a SOAP header element. If the value is FALSE, the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetRelay(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,  boolean Relay);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
Relay	IN	Relay; TRUE   FALSE

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapGetRelay\(\)](#)

## XmlSoapSetRole()

Sets role for SOAP header element. If the role specified is XMLSOAP\_ROLE\_ULT, then according to the standard the attribute is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlSoapSetRole(
    xmlsoapctx *ctx,
    xmlelemnode *elem,
    xmlsoaprole role);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	SOAP context
elem	IN/OUT	SOAP header element
role	IN	Role value

**Returns**

xmlerr numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK on success

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand\(\)](#)

---

---

## Package Traversal for XML C APIs

Package Traversal contains APIs that implement the rules and behavior of traversal. For convenience, we grouped the APIs under four general interfaces types:

- [DocumentTraversal Interface](#)
- [NodeFilter Interface](#)
- [NodeIterator Interface](#)
- [TreeWalker Interface](#)

### DocumentTraversal Interface for Traversal XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `DocumentTraversal` interface of `Traversal` for XML C APIs.

**Table 10-1 Summary of DocumentTraversal Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateNodeIter()</a>	Create node iterator object.
<a href="#">XmlDomCreateTreeWalker()</a>	Create a tree walker object.

#### XmlDomCreateNodeIter()

One of two methods of `DocumentTraversal` interface, used to create a `NodeIterator` object. This method is identical to [XmlDomCreateTreeWalker\(\)](#) except for the type of object returned.

The `whatToShow` argument is a mask of flag bits, one for each node type. The value `XMLDOM_SHOW_ALL` passes all node types through, otherwise only the types whose bits are set will be passed.

Entity reference expansion is controlled by the `entrefExpansion` flag. If `TRUE`, entity references are replaced with their final content; if `FALSE`, entity references are left as nodes.

#### Syntax

```
xmliter* XmlDomCreateNodeIter(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlnode *root,
    xmlshowbits whatToShow,
    XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(
        (*nodeFilter),
```

```
    xctx,  
    node),  
    boolean entrefExpand);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	existing NodeIterator to set, NULL to create
xerr	IN	root node for NodeIterator
whatToShow	IN	mask of XMLDOM_SHOW_XXX flag bits
nodeFilter	IN	node filter to be used, NULL if none
xerr	IN	whether to expand entity reference nodes

---

### Returns

(xmliter \*) original or new NodeIterator object

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomCreateTreeWalker\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlDomCreateTreeWalker()

One of two methods of DocumentTraversal interface, used to create a TreeWalker object. This method is identical to [XmlDomCreateNodeIter\(\)](#) except for the type of object returned.

The whatToShow argument is a mask of flag bits, one for each node type. The value XMLDOM\_SHOW\_ALL passes all node types through, otherwise only the types whose bits are set will be passed.

Entity reference expansion is controlled by the entrefExpansion flag. If TRUE, entity references are replaced with their final content; if FALSE, entity references are left as nodes.

### Syntax

```
xmlwalk* XmlDomCreateTreeWalker(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk* walker,  
    xmlnode *root,  
    xmlshowbits whatToShow,  
    XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(  
        (*nodeFilter),  
        xctx,
```



```
node),
boolean entrefExpansion);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	existing TreeWalker to set, NULL to create
xerr	IN	root node for TreeWalker
whatToShow	IN	mask of XMLDOM_SHOW_XXX flag bits
nodeFilter	IN	node filter to be used, NULL if none
xerr	IN	whether to expand entity reference nodes

### Returns

(xmlwalk \*) new TreeWalker object

### See Also:

[XmlDomCreateNodeIter\(\)](#)

## NodeFilter Interface for Traversal XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the NodeFilter interface of Traversal for XML C APIs.

**Table 10-2 Summary of NodeFilter Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F()</a>	Determines the filtering action based on node and filter.

### XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F()

Sole method of NodeFilter interface. Given a node and a filter, determines the filtering action to perform.

This function pointer is passed to the node iterator/tree walker methods, as needed.

Values for xmlerr are:

- XMLERR\_OK Accept the node. Navigation methods defined for NodeIterator or TreeWalker will return this node.

- `XMLERR_FILTER_REJECT` Reject the node. Navigation methods defined for `NodeIterator` or `TreeWalker` will not return this node. For `TreeWalker`, the children of this node will also be rejected. `NodeIterators` treat this as a synonym for `XMLDOM_FILTER_SKIP`
- `XMLERR_FILTER_SKIP` Skip this single node. Navigation methods defined for `NodeIterator` or `TreeWalker` will not return this node. For both `NodeIterator` and `TreeWalker`, the children of this node will still be considered.

### Syntax

```
#define XMLDOM_ACCEPT_NODE_F(func, xctx, node)
xmlerr func(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlnode *node);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>node</code>	IN	node to test

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) filtering result

## Nodelterator Interface for Traversal XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `NodeIterator` interface of Traversal for XML C APIs.

**Table 10-3 Summary of Nodelterator Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomIterDetach()</a>	Detach a node iterator (deactivate it).
<a href="#">XmlDomIterNextNode()</a>	Returns next node for iterator.
<a href="#">XmlDomIterPrevNode()</a>	Returns previous node for iterator.

### XmlDomIterDetach()

Detaches the `NodeIterator` from the set which it iterated over, releasing any resources and placing the iterator in the `INVALID` state. After detach has been invoked, calls to `XmlDomIterNextNode` or `XmlDomIterPrevNode` will raise the exception `XMLERR_ITER_DETACHED`.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlDomIterDetach(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object

**See Also:**

[XmlDomIterNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterPrevNode\(\)](#)

**XmlDomIterNextNode()**

Returns the next node in the set and advances the position of the iterator in the set. After a node iterator is created, the first call to `XmlDomIterNextNode` returns the first node in the set. It is assumed that the reference node (current iterator position) is never deleted. Otherwise, changes in the underlying DOM tree do not invalidate the iterator.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomIterNextNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(`xmlnode *`) next node in set being iterated over [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomIterPrevNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterDetach\(\)](#)

**XmlDomIterPrevNode()**

Returns the previous node in the set and moves the position of the iterator backward in the set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomIterPrevNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmliter *iter,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
iter	IN	node iterator object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous node in set being iterated over [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomIterNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomIterDetach\(\)](#)

## TreeWalker Interface for Traversal XML C APIs

Table 10-4 summarizes the methods available through the TreeWalker interface of Traversal for XML C APIs.

**Table 10-4 Summary of TreeWalker Traversal Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerFirstChild()</a>	Return first visible child of current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode()</a>	Return current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerGetRoot()</a>	Return root node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerLastChild()</a>	Return last visible child of current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerNextNode()</a>	Return next visible node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerNextSibling()</a>	Return next sibling node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerParentNode()</a>	Return parent node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerPrevNode()</a>	Return previous node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling()</a>	Return previous sibling node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode()</a>	Set current node.
<a href="#">XmlDomWalkerSetRoot()</a>	Set the root node.

## XmlDomWalkerFirstChild()

Moves the TreeWalker to the first visible child of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible children, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerFirstChild(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) first visible child [or NULL]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlDomWalkerLastChild\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode()

Return (get) current node, or NULL on error.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) current node

**XmlDomWalkerGetRoot()**

Return (get) root node, or NULL on error. Since the current node can be removed from under the root node together with a subtree where it belongs to, the current root node in a walker might have no relation to the current node any more. The `TreeWalker` iterations are based on the current node. However, the root node defines the space of an iteration. This function checks if the root node is still in the root node (ancestor) relation to the current node. If so, it returns this root node. Otherwise, it finds the root of the tree where the current node belongs to, and sets and returns this root as the root node of the walker. It returns NULL if the walker is a NULL pointer.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerGetRoot(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) root node

**XmlDomWalkerLastChild()**

Moves the `TreeWalker` to the last visible child of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible children, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerLastChild(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) last visible children [or NULL]

**XmlDomWalkerNextNode()**

Moves the `TreeWalker` to the next visible node in document order relative to the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no next node, or if the search for the next node attempts to step upward from the `TreeWalker`'s root node, returns `NULL`, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerNextNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) next node [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomWalkerNextSibling()**

Moves the `TreeWalker` to the next sibling of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible next sibling, returns `NULL`, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerNextSibling(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) next sibling [or NULL]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

---

**XmlDomWalkerParentNode()**

Moves to and returns the closest visible ancestor node of the current node. If the search for the parent node attempts to step upward from the TreeWalker's root node, or if it fails to find a visible ancestor node, this method retains the current position and returns null.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerParentNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

---



**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) parent node [or NULL]

**XmlDomWalkerPrevNode()**

Moves the *TreeWalker* to the previous visible node in document order relative to the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no previous node, or if the search for the previous node attempts to step upward from the *TreeWalker*'s root node, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerPrevNode(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous node [or NULL]

**See Also:**

[XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling\(\)](#)

**XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling()**

Moves the *TreeWalker* to the previous sibling of the current node, and returns the new node. If the current node has no visible previous sibling, returns NULL, and retains the current node.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlwalk *walker,
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) previous sibling [or NULL]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDomWalkerNextNode\(\)](#), [XmlDomWalkerPrevNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlDomWalkerNextSibling\(\)](#)

---

## XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode()

Sets and returns new current node. It also checks if the root node is an ancestor of the new current node. If not it does not set the current node, returns NULL, and sets retval to XMLDOM\_WALKER\_BAD\_NEW\_CUR. Returns NULL if an error.

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
node	IN	new current node
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) new current node

## XmlDomWalkerSetRoot()

Set the root node. Returns new root node if it is an ancestor of the current node. If not it signals an error and checks if the current root node is an ancestor of the current node. If yes it returns it. Otherwise it sets the root node to and returns the root of the tree where the current node belongs to. It returns NULL if the walker or the root node parameter is a NULL pointer.

### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlDomWalkerSetRoot(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlwalk *walker,  
    xmlnode *node,  
    xmlerr *xerr);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
walker	IN	TreeWalker object
node	IN	new root node
xerr	OUT	numeric return error code

---

### Returns

(xmlnode \*) new root node



---

## Package XML for XML C APIs

This C implementation of the XML processor (or parser) follows the W3C XML specification (rev REC-xml-19980210) and implements the required behavior of an XML processor in terms of how it must read XML data and the information it must provide to the application.

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XML package for XML C APIs.

**Table 11-1 Summary of XML Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlAccess()</a>	Set access method callbacks for URL.
<a href="#">XmlCreate()</a>	Create an XML Developer's Toolkit <code>xmlctx</code> .
<a href="#">XmlCreateDTD()</a>	Create DTD.
<a href="#">XmlCreateDocument()</a>	Create Document (node).
<a href="#">XmlDestroy()</a>	Destroy an <code>xmlctx</code> .
<a href="#">XmlDiff()</a>	Compares two XML documents.
<a href="#">XmlFreeDocument()</a>	Free a document (releases all resources).
<a href="#">XmlGetEncoding()</a>	Returns data encoding in use by XML context.
<a href="#">XmlHasFeature()</a>	Determine if DOM feature is implemented.
<a href="#">XmlIsSimple()</a>	Returns single-byte (simple) charset flag.
<a href="#">XmlIsUnicode()</a>	Returns <code>XMLISUnicode</code> (simple) charset flag.
<a href="#">XmlLoadDom()</a>	Load (parse) an XML document and produce a DOM.
<a href="#">XmlLoadSax()</a>	Load (parse) an XML document from and produce SAX events.
<a href="#">XmlLoadSaxVA()</a>	Load (parse) an XML document from and produce SAX events [ <code>varargs</code> ].
<a href="#">XmlSaveDom()</a>	Saves (serializes, formats) an XML document.
<a href="#">XmlVersion()</a>	Returns version string for XDK.

## XmlAccess()

Sets the open/read/close callbacks used to load data for a specific URL access method. Overrides the built-in data loading functions for HTTP, FTP, and so on, or provides functions to handle new types, such as UNKNOWN.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlAccess(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    xmlurlacc access,  
    void *userctx,  
    XML_ACCESS_OPEN_F(  
        (*openf),  
        ctx,  
        uri,  
        parts,  
        length,  
        uh),  
    XML_ACCESS_READ_F(  
        (*readf),  
        ctx,  
        uh,  
        data,  
        nraw,  
        eoi),  
    XML_ACCESS_CLOSE_F(  
        (*closef),  
        ctx,  
        uh));
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
access	IN	URL access method
userctx	IN	user-defined context passed to callbacks
openf	IN	open-access callback function
readf	IN	read-access callback function
closef	IN	close-access callback function

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

---

**See Also:**[XmlLoadDom\(\)](#), [XmlLoadSax\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlCreate()

Create an XML Developer's Toolkit `xmlctx`.

### Syntax

```
xmlctx *XmlCreate(  
    xmlerr *err,  
    oratext *name,  
    list);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>err</code>	OUT	returned error code
<code>access</code>	IN	name of context, for debugging

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>list</i>	IN	<p>NULL-terminated list of variable arguments. Properties common to all <code>xmlctx</code>'s, both XDK and XMLType, are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>data_encoding</code> is the data encoding in which XML data will be presented through DOM and SAX. Default is UTF-8 and UTF-E on EBCDIC platforms. Single-byte encodings are substantially faster than multibyte encodings; Unicode (UTF-16) uses more memory but has better performance than multibyte. If the <code>data_encoding</code> parameter is set to UTF-16, the APIs process wide-CHAR arrays, not <code>oratext</code> byte arrays.</li> <li>• <code>default_input_encoding</code> is the default input encoding). If the encoding of an input document cannot be automatically determined through other methods, this encoding will be the default.</li> <li>• <code>error_language</code> is the language (and optional encoding) in which error messages are created. Default is American with UTF-8 encoding. To specify only the language, give the name of the language ("American"). To also specify the encoding, add the period and the Oracle name of the encoding ("American.WE8ISO8859P1").</li> <li>• <code>error_handler</code> is the function pointer; see <code>XML_ERRMSG_F</code>. By default, errors output the formatted message to <code>stderr</code>. If an error handler is provided, message will be passed to it, and not printed.</li> <li>• <code>error_context</code> is user-defined context for error handler, a context pointer to be passed to the error handler function. It is user-defined; it is just specified here and passed along when an error occurs.</li> <li>• <code>input_encoding</code> is the name of a forced input encoding for input documents. Use it to override a document's <code>XMLDecl</code>, and always interpret it in the given encoding. It should be not necessary in normal use, as existing BOMs and <code>XMLDecls</code> should be correct.</li> <li>• <code>memory_alloc</code> is a low-level memory allocation function, if not using <code>malloc</code>. If used, the matching free function must also be given. See <code>XML_ALLOC_F</code>.</li> <li>• <code>memory_free</code> is a low-level memory freeing function, if not using <code>free</code>. Matches the <code>memory_alloc</code> function.</li> <li>• <code>memory_context</code> is a user-defined memory context passed to the <code>alloc</code> and <code>free</code> functions. Its definition and use is entirely up to the user; it is just set here and passed to the callbacks.</li> </ul>

The XDK has additional properties:

- `input_buffer_size` is the basic I/O buffer size. Default is 256K; the range is 4K to 4MB. Depending on the encoding, 1, 2 or 3 of these buffers may be needed. Note that size is in characters, not bytes. If the buffer holds Unicode data, it will be twice as large.
- `memory_block_size` is the size of chunk the high-level memory package will request from the low-level allocator; it is the basic unit of memory allocation. Default is 64K; the range is 16K to 256K.

These optional parameters should be used in the following manner:

```
xmlctx *XmlCreate(
    xmlerr *err,
    oratext *name,
    ("data_encoding", dataEncoding),
    ("default_data_encoding", defaultDataEncoding),
    ("error_language", errorLanguage),
    ("error_handler", errorHandler),
    ("error_context", errorContext)
    ("input_encoding", inputEncoding),
    ("memory_alloc", memAlloc),
    ("memory_free", memFree),
```



---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
-----------	--------	-------------

---

```
( "memory_context", memContext),
( "input_buffer_size", inputBufSize),
( "memory_block_size", memBlockSize) );
```

---

**Returns**

(xmlctx \*) created xmlctx [or NULL on error with err set]

---

**See Also:**

[XmlDestroy\(\)](#), [XML\\_ERRMSG\\_F\(\)](#) in [Package Callback APIs for C](#)

---

## XmlCreateDTD()

Create DTD.

**Syntax**

```
xmlDocNode* XmlCreateDTD(
    xmlctx *xctx
    oratext *qname,
    oratext *pubid,
    oratext *sysid,
    xmlerr *err);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
qname	IN	qualified name
pubid	IN	external subset public identifier
sysid	IN	external subset system identifier
err	OUT	returned error code

---

**Returns**

(xmlDtdNode \*) new DTD node

## XmlCreateDocument()

Creates the initial top-level DOCUMENT node and its supporting infrastructure. If a qualified name is provided, a an element with that name is created and set as the document's root element.

### Syntax

```
xmlDocnode* XmlCreateDocument(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    oratext *uri,  
    oratext *qname,  
    xmldtdnode *dtd,  
    xmlerr *err);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
uri	IN	namespace URI of root element to create, or NULL
qname	IN	qualified name of root element, or NULL if none
dtd	IN	associated DTD node
err	OUT	returned error code

---

### Returns

(xmlDocnode \*) new Document object.

## XmlDestroy()

Destroys an XML context.

### Syntax

```
void XmlDestroy(  
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

**See Also:**[XmlCreate\(\)](#)

## XmlDiff()

Compares two XML documents, specified either as DOM Trees, files, URIs, or streams, and so on, and returns its document node. If input documents are not supplied as DOM trees, DOM trees will be created for them.

If the inputs are DOMs, that memory will not be freed when the call completes.

Data(DOM) encoding of both the documents must be the same as the data encoding in the XML context. The DOM for the diff will be created in the data encoding specified by the XML context.

**Syntax**

```
xmlDocNode *XmlDiff(
    xmlContext *xctx,
    xmlError *err,
    unsigned flags,
    xmlDocSource firstSourceType,
    void *firstSource,
    void *firstSourceExtra,
    xmlDocSource secondSourceType,
    void *secondSource,
    void *secondSourceExtra,
    unsigned hashLevel);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK [0] on success
flags	IN	<p>Comparison options. By default, global algorithm and snapshot model are used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0) chooses defaults</li> <li>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL is the global algorithm; it will generate the minimal diff using INSERT, APPEND, DELETE and UPDATE, and needs more memory and time than XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL</li> <li>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL is the local algorithm; it may not generate the minimal diff, but it is faster and uses less space than XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL</li> <li>XMLDF_FL_DISABLE_UPDATE disables update operations with global algorithms</li> <li>XMLDF_FL_OUTPUT_SNAPSHOT uses the snapshot model</li> </ul>

Parameter	In/Out	Description
firstSourceType	IN	Source type for the first document. If 0, assumed to be a DOM document node.
firstSource	IN	Pointer to the first document source
firstSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the first document source; used for the buffer length pointer.
secondSourceType	IN	Source type for the second document. If 0, assumed to be a DOM document node.
secondSource	IN	Pointer to the second document source
secondSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the second document source; used for the buffer length pointer.
hashLevel	IN	<p>1-based depth (counting from the root), where hashing should be used for subtrees. Values less than or equal to 1 indicate no hashing. This value must be specified programmatically.</p> <p>The hash value for every element node is associated with the entire subtree rooted at that node. During the computation of the diff, there is no further drilling down into the tree beyond hash level depth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If hashing is used with <code>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL</code>, it will speed up diff computation significantly, but may reduce the quality of the diff.</li> <li>• With <code>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL</code>, it improves the quality of the diff</li> </ul>

## XmlFreeDocument()

Destroys a document created by `XmlCreateDocument` or through one of the Load functions. Releases all resources associated with the document, which is then invalid.

### Syntax

```
void XmlFreeDocument(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
doc	IN	document to free

**See Also:**[XmlCreateDocument\(\)](#), [XmlLoadDom\(\)](#)

## XmlGetEncoding()

Returns data encoding in use by XML context. Ordinarily, the data encoding is chosen by the user, so this function is not needed. However, if the data encoding is not specified, and allowed to default, this function can be used to return the name of that default encoding.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlGetEncoding(
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

**Returns**

(oratext \*) name of data encoding

**See Also:**[XmlIsSimple\(\)](#), [XmlIsUnicode\(\)](#)

## XmlHasFeature()

Determine if a DOM feature is implemented. Returns TRUE if the feature is implemented in the specified version, FALSE otherwise.

In level 1, the legal values for package are 'HTML' and 'XML' (case-insensitive), and the version is the string "1.0". If the version is not specified, supporting any version of the feature will cause the method to return TRUE.

- DOM 1.0 features are "XML" and "HTML".
- DOM 2.0 features are "Core", "XML", "HTML", "Views", "StyleSheets", "CSS", "CSS2", "Events", "UIEvents", "MouseEvents", "MutationEvents", "HTMLEvents", "Range", "Traversal"

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlHasFeature(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    oratext *feature,
    oratext *version);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
feature	IN	package name of the feature to test
version	IN	version number of the package name to test

---

**Returns**

(boolean) feature is implemented?

## XmlIsSimple()

Returns a flag saying whether the context's data encoding is "simple", single-byte for each character, like ASCII or EBCDIC.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlIsSimple(  
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

---

**Returns**

(boolean) TRUE if data encoding is "simple", FALSE otherwise

---

**See Also:**

[XmlGetEncoding\(\)](#), [XmlIsUnicode\(\)](#)

---

## XmlIsUnicode()

Returns a flag saying whether the context's data encoding is Unicode, UTF-16, with two-byte for each character.

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlIsUnicode(  
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

### Returns

(boolean) TRUE if data encoding is Unicode, FALSE otherwise

---

#### See Also:

[XmlGetEncoding\(\)](#), [XmlIsSimple\(\)](#)

---

## XmlLoadDom()

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and creates a DOM. The root document node is returned on success, or NULL on failure (with err set).

The function takes two fixed arguments, the xmlctx and an error return code, then zero or more (property, value) pairs, then NULL.

SOURCE Input source is set by one of the following mutually exclusive properties (choose one):

- ("uri", document URI) [compiler encoding]
- ("file", document filesystem path) [compiler encoding]
- ("buffer", address of buffer, "buffer\_length", # bytes in buffer)
- ("stream", address of stream object, "stream\_context", pointer to stream object's context)
- ("stdio", FILE\* stream)

PROPERTIES Additional properties:

- ("dtd", DTD node) DTD for document
- ("base\_uri", document base URI) for documents loaded from other sources than a URI, sets the effective base URI. the document's base URI is needed in order to resolve relative URI include, import, and so on.
- ("input\_encoding", encoding name) forced input encoding [name]
- ("default\_input\_encoding", encoding\_name) default input encoding to assume if document is not self-describing (no BOM, protocol header, XMLDecl, and so on)
- ("schema\_location", string) schemaLocation of schema for this document. used to figure optimal layout when loading documents into a database
- ("validate", boolean) when TRUE, turns on DTD validation; by default, only well-formedness is checked. note that schema validation is a separate beast.

- ("discard\_whitespace", boolean) when TRUE, formatting whitespace between elements (newlines and indentation) in input documents is discarded. by default, ALL input characters are preserved.
- ("dtd\_only", boolean) when TRUE, parses an external DTD, not a complete XML document.
- ("stop\_on\_warning", boolean) when TRUE, warnings are treated the same as errors and cause parsing, validation, and so on, to stop immediately. by default, warnings are issued but the game continues.
- ("warn\_duplicate\_entity", boolean) when TRUE, entities which are declared more than once will cause warnings to be issued. the default is to accept the first declaration and silently ignore the rest.
- ("no\_expand\_char\_ref", boolean) when TRUE, causes character references to be left unexpanded in the DOM data. ordinarily, character references are replaced by the character they represent. however, when a document is saved those characters entities do not reappear. to way to ensure they remain through load and save is to not expand them.
- ("no\_check\_chars", boolean) when TRUE, omits the test of XML [2] Char production: all input characters will be accepted as valid

### Syntax

```
xmlDocnode *XmlLoadDom(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
err	OUT	returned error code
list	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

### Returns

(xmlDocnode \*) document node on success [NULL on failure with err set]

---

#### See Also:

[XmlSaveDom\(\)](#)

---

## XmlLoadSax()

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and generates a set of SAX events (as user callbacks). Input sources and basic set of properties is the same as for XmlLoadDom.



**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlLoadSax(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>xctx</i>	IN	XML context
<i>saxcb</i>	IN	SAX callback structure
<i>saxctx</i>	IN	context passed to SAX callbacks
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(*xmlerr*) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

**XmlLoadSaxVA()**

Loads (parses) an XML document from an input source and generates a set of SAX events (as user callbacks). Input sources and basic set of properties is the same as for XmlLoadDom.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlLoadSaxVA(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx,
    va_list va);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>xctx</i>	IN	XML context
<i>saxcb</i>	IN	SAX callback structure
<i>saxctx</i>	IN	context passed to SAX callbacks
<i>va</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**XmlSaveDom()**

Serializes document or subtree to the given destination and returns the number of bytes written; if no destination is provided, just returns formatted size but does not output.

If an output encoding is specified, the document will be re-encoded on output; otherwise, it will be in its existing encoding.

The top level is indented step\*level spaces, the next level step\*(level+1) spaces, and so on.

When saving to a buffer, if the buffer overflows, 0 is returned and err is set to XMLERR\_SAVE\_OVERFLOW.

DESTINATION Output destination is set by one of the following mutually exclusive properties (choose one):

- ("uri", document URI) POST, PUT? [compiler encoding]
- ("file", document filesystem path) [compiler encoding]
- ("buffer", address of buffer, "buffer\_length", # bytes in buffer)
- ("stream", address of stream object, "stream\_context", pointer to stream object's context)

PROPERTIES Additional properties:

- ("output\_encoding", encoding name) name of final encoding for document. unless specified, saved document will be in same encoding as xmlctx.
- ("indent\_step", unsigned) spaces to indent each level of output. default is 4, 0 means no indentation.
- ("indent\_level", unsigned) initial indentation level. default is 0, which means no indentation, flush left.
- ("xmldecl", boolean) include an XMLDecl in the output document. ordinarily an XMLDecl is output for a complete document (root node is DOC).
- ("bom", boolean) input a BOM in the output document. usually the BOM is only needed for certain encodings (UTF-16), and optional for others (UTF-8). causes optional BOMs to be output.
- ("prune", boolean) prunes the output like the unix 'find' command; does not descend to children, just prints the one node given.

**Syntax**

```
ubig_ora XmlSaveDom(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    xmlnode *root,
    list);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>xctx</i>	IN	XML context
<i>err</i>	OUT	error code on failure
<i>root</i>	IN	root node or subtree to save
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of variable arguments

---

**Returns**

(*ubig\_ora*) number of bytes written to destination

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlLoadDom\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlVersion()

Returns the version string for the XDK

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlVersion();
```

**Returns**

(*oratext \**) version string



---

## Package XmlDiff for XML C APIs

The methods of the package `XmlDiff` allow you to compare and modify XML documents. The `XmlDiff()` and `XmlPatch()` methods are generally equivalent to UNIX commands `diff` and `patch`, and in addition are optimized for, and aware of, XML.

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `XmlDiff` package for XML C APIs.

**Table 12-1 Summary of XmlDiff Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<code>XmlDiff()</code>	Determines the changes between two XML documents.
<code>XmlHash()</code>	Computes a hash value for an XML document or a node in DOM.
<code>XmlPatch()</code>	Applies changes on input XML document.

---

**See Also:**

*Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*

---

### XmlDiff()

Determines the changes between two XML documents.

`XmlDiff()` captures the `diff` between two documents in an XML format that conforms to the `xdiff` XML schema; you can customize this output.

These input documents can be specified either as DOM Trees, files, URI, `orastream`, and so on. DOM trees for both the inputs will be created if they are not supplied as DOM trees. The DOM for the diff document is created, and the `doc` node is returned.

If the caller supplies inputs as DOMs, the memory for the DOMs will not be freed.

Data (DOM) encoding of both documents must be the same as the data encoding in `xctx`. The diff DOM will be created in the data encoding specified in `xctx`.

There are four algorithms that can be run in `XmlDiff()`: global, local, global with hashing, and local with hashing. The `diff` may be different in the four cases.

The global algorithm will generate minimal `diff` using insert, append, delete and update operations. It needs more memory and time than the local algorithm. The local algorithm may not generate minimal diff, but is faster and uses less space than the global algorithm.

Hashing can be used with both global and local algorithms. If hashing is used with the global algorithm, it will speed up diff computation significantly, but may reduce the quality of diff. With local algorithm, it improves the quality of the diff.

You must specify a depth at which to use hashing. In hashing, the hash value for every element node is associated with a digest for the entire subtree rooted at that node. The tree is not investigated beyond the specified hash level depth while computing the diff.

The output of the global algorithm with or without hashing meets 'operations-in-docorder' requirement (the nodes must appear in same order as a preorder traversal of the document tree), but the output of the local algorithm does not.

The namespace prefixes `XmlDiff()` will use in the `xdiff` document may be same as those in either the first or second `doc`, depending on which prefix was seen first while processing. The NS URI will be bound to the prefix in the output appropriately. If this NS does not have a prefix in both docs, a new prefix will be generated and bound to the NS in `xdiff` doc.

### Syntax

```
xmlDocNode *XmlDiff(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    ub4 flags,
    xmlDfsrct firstSourceType,
    void *firstSource,
    void *firstSourceExtra,
    xmlDfsrct secondSourceType,
    void *secondSource,
    void *secondSourceExtra,
    uword hashLevel,
    oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>xctx</code>	IN	XML context
<code>xmlerr</code>	OUT	numeric error code, <code>XMLERR_OK</code> on success
<code>flags</code>	IN	The following options are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0)</code> chooses defaults</li> <li><code>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_GLOBAL</code> is the global algorithm</li> <li><code>XMLDF_FL_ALGORITHM_LOCAL</code> is the local algorithm</li> <li><code>XMLDF_FL_DISABLE_UPDATE</code> indicates a disable update operation, with the global algorithm</li> </ul> By default, global algorithm is used.
<code>firstSourceType</code>	IN	Type of source for first document; if zero, <code>firstSource</code> is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
<code>firstSource</code>	IN	Pointer to the source for the first document

Parameter	In/Out	Description
firstSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the first document; used for buffer length pointer
secondSourceType	IN	Type of source for second document; if zero, secondSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
secondSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the second document
secondSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the second document; used for buffer length pointer
hashLevel	IN	The depth (counting from 1 for the root) at which to use hashing for sub trees; <=1 means not to use hashing
properties	IN	Used for Output Builder

### Returns

(xmlDocNode) Doc node for the diff document, or NULL on error

## XmlHash()

Computes a hash value for an XML document or a node in DOM.

If the hash values for two XML subtrees are equal, the corresponding subtrees are equal to a very high probability. Computes the hash value using the Message Digest algorithm 5 (MD5), a widely-used cryptographic hash function with a 128-bit hash value, so there is a very small probability that two different inputs might map to same MD5 digest.

The source can be specified as a file, a URL, and so on. It can also be a Document node in DOM, or any other DOM node, and must be specified using the `inputSource` parameter. If `inputSource` is a non-Document DOM node, `inputSourceExtra` must point to the Document node for the DOM.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlHash(
    xmlctx *xctx,
    xmlhasht *digest,
    ub4 flags,
    xmldfsrct inputSourceType,
    void *inputSource,
    void *inputSourceExtra,
    oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
digest	OUT	The hash value for the XML sub-tree
flags	IN	Not used
inputSourceType	IN	Type of source for the input document; if zero, <code>inputSource</code> is assumed to be a DOM doc node
inputSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the input document
inputSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the input document; if used for a node pointer in a DOM, <code>inputSource</code> must be a document node.
properties	IN	Not used

### Returns

(`xmlerr`) numeric error code, `XMLERR_OK` on success

## XmlPatch()

[XmlPatch\(\)](#) applies `Xdiff` schema-conforming changes to an input document. The input document and the `diff` document can be specified either as a DOM tree, file, URI, or buffer.

DOMs are built for both the input and `diff` document if they are not supplied as DOMs.

Data(DOM) encoding of both input and `diff` documents must be the same as the data encoding in `xctx`. The patched DOM will be in the data encoding specified in `xctx`.

Only the simple XPath is supported in the snapshot model. The XPath should identify a node with a position predicate in abbreviated syntax, such as `/a[1]/b[2]`. The XPaths generated by [XmlDiff\(\)](#) meet this requirement. Also, 'operations-in-document' condition must be `TRUE`; the nodes must appear in same order as a preorder traversal of the document tree. Global (with or without hashing) meets this requirement. Local does not.

The programming interface should specify the output model used in the `diff` doc. The `oracle-xmldiff` should be the first child of the top level `xdiff` element. It should also use flags to specify if operations are in document order (`TRUE` or `FALSE`), and whether the output model is a snapshot or current.

### Syntax

```
xmlDocNode *XmlPatch(
    xmlCtx *xctx,
    xmlerr *err,
    ub4 flags,
    xmlDfsrct inputSourceType,
    void *inputSource,
```



```
void *inputSourceExtra,
xmlDfsrc diffSourceType,
void *diffSource,
void *diffSourceExtra,
oraprop *properties);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context
xmlerr	OUT	numeric error code, XMLERR_OK on success
flags	IN	The following option is available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>XMLDF_FL_DEFAULTS (=0) chooses defaults</li> </ul>
inputSourceType	IN	Type of source for the input document; if zero, inputSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
inputSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the input document
inputSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the input document; used for buffer length pointer
diffSourceType	IN	Type of source for diff document; if zero, secondSource is assumed to be a DOM doc node.
diffsSource	IN	Pointer to the source for the diff document
diffSourceExtra	IN	An additional pointer to the source for the diff document; used for buffer length pointer
properties	IN	Not used

### Returns

(xmlDocnode) Doc node for the pathed DOM, or NULL on error



---

## Package XPath for XML C APIs

XPath methods process XPath related types and interfaces.

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XPath package for XML C APIs.

**Table 13-1 Summary of XPath Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPathCreateCtx()</a>	Create an XPath context.
<a href="#">XmlXPathDestroyCtx()</a>	Destroy an XPath context.
<a href="#">XmlXPathEval()</a>	Evaluate XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()</a>	Get boolean value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()</a>	Get fragment value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode()</a>	Get node from nodeset type XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()</a>	Get number of nodes in nodeset type XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()</a>	Get number from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectString()</a>	Get string from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXPathGetObjectType()</a>	Get XPath object type.
<a href="#">XmlXPathParse()</a>	Parse XPath expression.

### XmlXPathCreateCtx()

Create an XPath context

#### Syntax

```

xpctx* XmlXPathCreateCtx(
    xmlctx *xsl,
    oratext *baseuri,
    xmlnode *ctxnode,
    ub4 ctxpos,
    ub4 ctxsize);

```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xsl	IN	XSL stylesheet as xmlDoc object
baseuri	IN	base URI used by document, if any
ctxnode	IN	current context position
ctxpos	IN	current context size
ctxsize	IN	current context node

**Returns**

(xpctx \*) XPath context or NULL on error

## XmlXPathDestroyCtx()

Destroy an XPath context.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlXPathDestroyCtx(
    xpctx *xslxpctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xslxpctx	IN	XPath context object

## XmlXPathEval()

Evaluate XPath expression.

**Syntax**

```
xpobj *XmlXPathEval(
    xpctx *xctx,
    xpexpr *expree,
    xmlerr *err);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XPath context

Parameter	In/Out	Description
exprtree	IN	parsed XPath expression tree
err	OUT	error code

**Returns**

(xpobj \*) result XPath object or NULL on error

## XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()

Get boolean value of XPath object

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(boolean) truth value

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()

Get boolean value of XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlNode* XmlXPathGetObjectFragment(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(boolean) truth value

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode()

Get node from nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode(
    xpobj *obj,
    ub4 i);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object
i	IN	node index in nodeset

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) The object type or values.

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()

Get number of nodes in nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in nodeset

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()

Get number from XPath object

**Syntax**

```
double XmlXPathGetObjectNumber(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(double) number

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

## XmlXPathGetObjectString()

Get string from XPath object

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlXPathGetObjectString(
    xpobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

**Returns**

(oratext \*) string

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXPathGetObjectType()

Get XPath object type

**Syntax**

```
xmlxslobjtype XmlXPathGetObjectType(  
    xpobj *obj);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	XPath object

---

**Returns**

(xmlxslobjtype) type-code for object

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXPathGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXPathParse()

Parse XPath expression.

**Syntax**

```
xpexpr* XmlXPathParse(  
    xpctx *xctx,  
    oratext *expr,  
    xmlerr *err);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XPath context object
expr	IN	XPath expression
err	OUT	error code

---



---

**Returns**

(xpexpr \*) XPath expression parse tree or NULL on error



---

## Package XPointer for XML C APIs

Package `XPointer` methods implement XML pointers for XML C APIs. They are grouped into three interface types:

- [XPointer Interface](#)
- [XPtrLoc Interface](#)
- [XPtrLocSet Interface](#)

### XPointer Interface for XPointer XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the `XPointer` interface of `XPointer` for XML C APIs.

**Table 14-1 Summary of XPointer XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPointerEval()</a>	Evaluates XPointer string.

### XmlXPointerEval()

Parses and evaluates xpointer string and calculates locations in the document.

#### Syntax

```
xmlxptrlocset* XmlXPointerEval(
    xmldocnode* doc,
    oratext* xptrstr);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<code>doc</code>	IN	document node of the corresponding DOM tree
<code>xptrstr</code>	IN	xpointer string

#### Returns

(`xmlxptrlocset *`) calculated location set

## XPtrLoc Interface for XPointer XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XPtrLoc interface of XPointer for XML C API.

**Table 14-2 Summary of XPtrLoc XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetNode()</a>	Returns Xml node from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetPoint()</a>	Returns Xml point from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetRange()</a>	Returns Xml range from XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocGetType()</a>	Returns type of XPtrLoc.
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocToString()</a>	Returns string for a location.

### XmlXPtrLocGetNode()

Returns node from location

#### Syntax

```
xmlnode* XmlXPtrLocGetNode(
    xmlptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

#### Returns

(xmlnode \*) Node from location

### XmlXPtrLocGetPoint()

Returns point from location

#### Syntax

```
xmlpoint* XmlXPtrLocGetPoint(
    xmlptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

#### Returns

(xmlpoint \*) Point from location

## XmlXPtrLocGetRange()

Returns range from location.

### Syntax

```
xmlrange* XmlXPtrLocGetRange(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

### Returns

(xmlrange \*) Range from location

## XmlXPtrLocGetType()

Returns type of location

### Syntax

```
xmlxptrloctype XmlXPtrLocGetType(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

### Returns

(xmlxptrloctype) Type of location

## XmlXPtrLocToString()

Returns string for a location:

- node name: name of the container node
- names of container nodes: "not a location" otherwise

### Syntax

```
oratext* XmlXPtrLocToString(  
    xmlxptrloc* loc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
loc	IN	location

**Returns**

(oratext \*) string

## XPtrLocSet Interface for XPointer XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XPtrLocSet interface of XPointer for XML C APIs.

**Table 14-3 Summary of XPtrLocSet XPointer Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetFree()</a>	Free a location set
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem()</a>	Returns location with idx position in XPtrLocSet
<a href="#">XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength()</a>	Returns length of XPtrLocSet.

### XmlXPtrLocSetFree()

It is user's responsibility to call this function on every location set returned by XPointer or XPtrLocSet interfaces

**Syntax**

```
void XmlXPtrLocSetFree(  
    xmlxptrlocset* locset);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
locset	IN	location set

### XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem()

Returns location with idx position in the location set. First position is 1.

**Syntax**

```
xmlxptrloc* XmlXPtrLocSetGetItem(  
    xmlxptrlocset* locset,  
    ub4 idx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
locset	IN	location set
idx	IN	location index

**Returns**

(xmlxptrloc \*) location with the position idx

## XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength()

Returns the number of locations in the location set

### Syntax

```
ub4 XmlXPtrLocSetGetLength(  
    xmlxptrlocset* locset);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
locset	IN	location set

---

### Returns

(ub4) number of nodes in locset





---

## Package XSLT for XML C APIs

Package XSLT implements types and methods related to XSL processing.

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XSLT package for XML C APIs.

**Table 15-1 Summary of XSLT Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXslCreate()</a>	Create an XSL context.
<a href="#">XmlXslDestroy()</a>	Destroy an XSL context.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetBaseURI()</a>	Get the XSL processor base URI.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetOutput()</a>	Get the XSL result fragment.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetStylesheetDom()</a>	Get the XSL stylesheet document.
<a href="#">XmlXslGetTextParam()</a>	Get the XSL text parameter value.
<a href="#">XmlXslProcess()</a>	Perform XSL processing on an instance document.
<a href="#">XmlXslResetAllParams()</a>	Reset XSL processor parameters.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputDom()</a>	Set the XSL context output DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()</a>	Set the XSL context output encoding.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputMethod()</a>	Set the XSL context output method.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputSax()</a>	Set the XSL context output SAX.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetOutputStream()</a>	Set the XSL context output stream.
<a href="#">XmlXslSetTextParam()</a>	Set the XSL context output text parameter.

### XmlXslCreate()

Create an XSLT context

#### Syntax

```
xmlctx *XmlXslCreate(
    xmlctx *ctx,
    xmlDocnode *xsl,
    oratext *baseuri,
    xmlerr *err);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
xsl	IN	XSL stylesheet document object
baseuri	IN	base URI for including and importing documents
err	IN/OUT	returned error code

---

**Returns**

(xslctx \*) XSLT context

**See Also:**

[XmlXslDestroy\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlXslDestroy()

Destroy an XSL context

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslDestroy(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**See Also:**

[XmlXslCreate\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlXslGetBaseURI()

Get the XSL processor base URI

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlXslGetBaseURI(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

**Returns**

(oratext \*) base URI

**XmlXslGetOutput()**

Get the XSL result fragment

**Syntax**

```
xmlfragnode *XmlXslGetOutput(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

**Returns**

(xmlfragnode \*) result fragment

**XmlXslGetStylesheetDom()**

Get the XSL stylesheet document

**Syntax**

```
xmldocnode *XmlXslGetStylesheetDom(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

**Returns**

(xmldocnode \*) stylesheet document

**XmlXslGetTextParam()**

Get the XSL text parameter value

**Syntax**

```
orertext *XmlXslGetTextParam(  
    xslctx *ctx,  
    orertext *name);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
name	IN	name of the top-level parameter value

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) parameter value

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXslSetTextParam\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXslProcess()

Do XSL processing on an instance document

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslProcess(  
    xslctx *ctx,  
    xmldocnode *xml,  
    boolean normalize);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
xml	IN	instance document to process
normalize	IN	if TRUE, force the XSL processor to normalize the document

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

## XmlXslResetAllParams()

Reset all the top level parameters added

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslResetAllParams(
    xslctx *ctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**See Also:**

[XmlXslSetTextParam\(\)](#)

## XmlXslSetOutputDom()

Set the xslctx output DOM

## XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()

Set the xslctx output encoding

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputEncoding(
    xslctx *ctx,
    oratext* encoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
encoding	IN	output encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

## XmlXslSetOutputMethod()

Set the xslctx output method

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputMethod(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlxslomethod method);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XML context object
encoding	IN	XSL output method

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXslSetOutputSax()**

Set the xslctx output SAX

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputSax(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlsaxcb* saxcb,
    void *saxctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
saxcb	IN	SAX callback object
saxctx	IN	SAX callback context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXslSetOutputStream()****Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetOutputStream(
    xslctx *ctx,
    xmlostream *stream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
stream	IN	output stream object

---

**Returns**

(xmlxsl) error code, XMLXSL\_SUCC [0] on success.

## XmlXslSetTextParam()

Set the xslctx output text parameter.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXslSetTextParam(
    xslctx *ctx,
    oratext *name,
    oratext *value);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ctx	IN	XSL context object
name	IN	name of top level parameter
value	IN	value of top level parameter

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**See Also:**

[XmlXslGetTextParam\(\)](#)

---



---





---

## Package XSLTVM for XML C APIs

Package XSLTVM implements the XSL Transformation (XSLT) language for XML C APIs, as specified in W3C Recommendation 16 November 1999. For convenience, we grouped XSLTVM methods into two interface types.

- [XSLTC Interface](#)
- [XSLTVM Interface](#)

### XSLTC Interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XSLTC interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs.

**Table 16-1 Summary of XSLTC XSLTVM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileBuffer()</a>	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from buffer into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileDom()</a>	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from DOM into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileFile()</a>	Compile an XSLT stylesheet from file into bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileURI()</a>	Compile XSLT stylesheet from URI into byte code.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCompileXPath()</a>	Compile an XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCreateComp()</a>	Create an XSLT compiler.
<a href="#">XmlXvmDestroyComp()</a>	Destroy an XSLT compiler object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength()</a>	Returns the bytecode length.

#### XmlXvmCompileBuffer()

Compile an XSLT stylesheet from buffer into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- `XMLXVM_DEBUG` forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- `XMLXVM_STRIPSPACE` is equivalent to `<xsl:strip-space elements="*" />`.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

## XmlXvmCompileDom()

Compile an XSLT stylesheet from DOM into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to `<xsl:strip-space elements="*" />`.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileDom(  
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,  
    xmldocnode *root,  
    xmlxvmflag flags,  
    xmlerr *error);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
root	IN	root element of the stylesheet DOM
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

---

### Returns

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmCompileFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileURI\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlXvmCompileFile()

Compile XSLT stylesheet from file into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to `<xsl:strip-space elements="*" />`.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileFile(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
    oratext *path,
    oratext *baseURI,
    xmlxvmflag flags,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
path	IN	path of XSL stylesheet file
baseuri	IN	base URI of the document
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

### Returns

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

---

#### See Also:

[XmlXvmCompileURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileDom\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmCompileURI()

Compile XSLT stylesheet from URI into bytecode. Compiler flags could be one or more of the following:

- XMLXVM\_DEBUG forces compiler to include debug information into the bytecode
- XMLXVM\_STRIPSPACE is equivalent to `<xsl:strip-space elements="*" />`.

The generated bytecode resides in a compiler buffer which is freed when next stylesheet is compiled or when compiler object is deleted. Hence, if the bytecode is to be reused it should be copied into another location.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileURI(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,
```

```
orertext *uri,  
xmlxvmflag flags,  
xmlerr *error);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
uri	IN	URI of the file that contains the XSL stylesheet
flags	IN	flags for the current compilation
error	OUT	returned error code

---

### Returns

(ub2 \*) bytecode or NULL on error

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlXvmCompileFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileBuffer\(\)](#), [XmlXvmCompileDom\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlXvmCompileXPath()

Compiles an XPath expression. The optional `pfxmap` is used to map namespace prefixes to URIs in the XPath expression. It is an array of prefix, URI values, ending in NULL, and so on.

### Syntax

```
ub2 *XmlXvmCompileXPath(  
    xmlxvmcomp *comp,  
    orertext *xpath,  
    orertext **pfxmap,  
    xmlerr *error);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	compiler object
xpath	IN	XPath expression
pfxmap	IN	array of prefix-URI mappings
error	OUT	returned error code

---

**Returns**

(ub2 \*) XPath expression bytecode or NULL on error

**XmlXvmCreateComp()**

Create an XSLT compiler object. The XSLT compiler is used to compile XSLT stylesheets into bytecode.

**Syntax**

```
xmlxvmcomp *XmlXvmCreateComp(
    xmlctx *xctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
xctx	IN	XML context

**Returns**

(xmlxvmcomp \*) XSLT compiler object, or NULL on error

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmDestroyComp\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmDestroyComp()**

Destroys an XSLT compiler object

**Syntax**

```
void XmlXvmDestroyComp(
    xmlxvmcomp *comp);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
comp	IN	XSLT compiler object

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmCreateComp\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength()**

The bytecode length is needed when the bytecode is to be copied or when it is set into XSLTVM.

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength(
    ub2 *bytecode,
    xmlerr *error);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
bytecode	IN	bytecode buffer
error	OUT	returned error code

**Returns**

(ub4) The bytecode length in bytes.

**XSLTVM Interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs**

The following table summarizes the methods available through the XSLTVM interface of XSLTVM for XML C APIs.

**Table 16-2 Summary of XSLTVM XSLTVM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XMLXVM_DEBUG_F()</a>	XMLXSLTVM debug function.
<a href="#">XmlXvmCreate()</a>	Create an XSLT virtual machine.
<a href="#">XmlXvmDestroy()</a>	Destroys an XSLT virtual machine.
<a href="#">XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()</a>	Evaluate already-compiled XPath expression.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()</a>	Get boolean value of XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()</a>	Get node from nodeset type XPathobject.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()</a>	Get number of nodes in nodeset type XPathobject.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()</a>	Get number from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectString()</a>	Get string from XPath object.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetObjectType()</a>	Get XPath object type.
<a href="#">XmlXvmGetOutputDom()</a>	Returns the output DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmResetParams()</a>	Resets the stylesheet top level text parameters.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBaseURI()</a>	Sets the base URI for the XLTVM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()</a>	Set the compiled bytecode.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()</a>	Set the compiled byte code from file.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()</a>	Set the compiled bytecode.

**Table 16-2 (Cont.) Summary of XSLTVM XSLTVM Methods for XML C Implementation**

Function	Summary
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()</a>	Set a callback function for debugging.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputDom()</a>	Sets the XSLTVM to output document node.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()</a>	Sets the encoding for the XSLTVM output.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputSax()</a>	Sets XSLTVM to output SAX.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetOutputStream()</a>	Set the XSLTVM output to a user-defined stream.
<a href="#">XmlXvmSetTextParam()</a>	Set the stylesheet top-level text parameter.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformBuffer()</a>	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in memory.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformDom()</a>	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document as DOM.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformFile()</a>	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in file.
<a href="#">XmlXvmTransformURI()</a>	Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document from URI.

## XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F()

Debug callback function for XSLT VM.

### Syntax

```
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG_F(func, line, file, obj, n)
void func(
    ub2 line,
    oratext *file,
    xvmobj *obj,
    ub4 n)
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
line	IN	source stylesheet line number
file	IN	stylesheet filename
obj	IN	current VM object
n	IN	index of current node

---

**See Also:**[XmlXvmSetDebugFunc\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmCreate()

Create an XSLT virtual machine. Zero or more of the following XSLTVM properties could be set by using this API:

- "VMStack", *size* sets the size[Kbyte] of the main VM stack; default size is 4K.
- "NodeStack", *size* sets the size[Kbyte] of the node-stack; default size is 16K.
- "StringStack", *size* sets the size[Kbyte] of the string-stack; default size is 64K.

If the stack size is not specified the default size is used. The explicit stack size setting is needed when XSLTVM terminates with "Stack Overflow" message or when smaller memory footprints are required.

### Syntax

```
xmlxvm *XmlXvmCreate(  
    xmlctx *xctx,  
    list);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
<i>xctx</i>	IN	XML context
<i>list</i>	IN	NULL-terminated list of properties to set; can be empty

---

### Returns

(*xmlxvm \**) XSLT virtual machine object, or NULL on error

---

**See Also:**[XmlXvmDestroy\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmDestroy()

Destroys an XSLT virtual machine

### Syntax

```
void XmlXvmDestroy(  
    xmlxvm *vm);
```



Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmCreate\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmEvaluateXPath()**

Evaluate already-compiled XPath expression

**Syntax**

```
xvmobj *XmlXvmEvaluateXPath(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    ub2 *bytecode,
    ub4 ctxpos,
    ub4 ctxsize,
    xmlnode *ctxnode);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLTVM object
bytecode	IN	XPath expression bytecode
ctxpos	IN	current context position
ctxsize	IN	current context size
ctxnode	IN	current context node

**Returns**

(xvmobj \*) XPath object

**XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean()**

Get boolean value of XPath object

**Syntax**

```
boolean XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

---

**Returns**

(boolean) value of an XPath object

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode()

Get node from nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
xmlnode *XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode(  
    xvobj *obj,  
    ub4 i);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object
i	IN	node index in nodeset

---

**Returns**

(xmlnode \*) The object type or values.

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum()

Get number of nodes in nodeset-type XPath object

**Syntax**

```
ub4 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum(  
    xvobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(ub4) number of nodes in nodeset

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectNumber()**

Get number from XPath object.

**Syntax**

```
double XmlXvmGetObjectNumber(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

**Returns**

(double) number

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmGetObjectString()**

Get string from XPath object.

**Syntax**

```
oratext *XmlXvmGetObjectString(
    xvmobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

---

**Returns**

(orertext \*) string

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectType\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmGetObjectType()

Get XPath object type

**Syntax**

```
xmlxvmobjtype XmlXvmGetObjectType(  
    xvobj *obj);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
obj	IN	object

---

**Returns**

(xmlxvmobjtype) type-code for object

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectString\(\)](#), [XmlXvmGetObjectNumber\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmGetOutputDom()

Returns the root node of the result DOM tree (if any). `XmlXvmSetOutputDom` has to be used before transformation to set the VM to output a DOM tree (the default VM output is a stream).

**Syntax**

```
xmlfragnode *XmlXvmGetOutputDom(  
    xmlxvm *vm);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

**Returns**

(xmlfragnode \*) output DOM, or NULL in a case of SAX or Stream output.

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmSetOutputDom\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmResetParams()**

Resets the stylesheet top-level parameters with their default values.

**Syntax**

```
void XmlXvmResetParams(
    xmlxvm *vm);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

**XmlXvmSetBaseURI()**

Sets the base URI for the XSLTVM. The baseuri is used by VM to the compose the path XML documents to be loaded for transformation using document or XmlXvmTransformFile.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBaseURI(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *baseuri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
baseuri	IN	VM base URI for reading and writing documents

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

## XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer()

Set the compiled bytecode from buffer. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set. The VM doesn't copy the bytecode into internal buffer, hence the it shouldn't be freed before VM finishes using it.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    ub2 *buffer,  
    size_t buflen);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
buffer	IN	user's buffer
buflen	IN	size of buffer, in bytes

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

---

---

#### See Also:

[XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI\(\)](#)

---

---

## XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile()

Set the compiled bytecode from file. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *path);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
path	IN	path of bytecode file

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI()**

Set the compiled bytecode from URI. Any previously set bytecode is replaced. An XML transformation can't be performed if the stylesheet bytecode is not set.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    oratext *uri);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
uri	IN	path of bytecode file

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [0] on success

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer\(\)](#)

**XmlXvmSetDebugFunc()**

The user callback function is invoked by VM every time the execution reaches a new line in the XSLT stylesheet. The VM passes to the user the stylesheet file name, the line number, the current context nodes-set and the current node index in the node-set. IMPORTANT - the stylesheet has to be compiled with flag XMLXVM\_DEBUG.

**Syntax**

```
#define XMLXVM_DEBUG_FUNC(func)
void func (ub2 line, oratext *filename, xvobj *obj, ub4 n)
xmlerr XmlXvmSetDebugFunc(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    XMLXVM_DEBUG_FUNC(debugcallback));
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	XSLT VM context
func	IN	callback function

**Returns**

(xmlerr) numeric error code, XMLERR\_OK [ 0 ] on success

**XmlXvmSetOutputDom()**

Sets the XSLTVM to output DOM. If `xmldocnode==NULL`, then the result DOM tree belongs to the VM object and is deleted when a new transformation is performed or when the VM object is deleted. If the result DOM tree is to be used for longer period of time then an `xmldocnode` has to be created and set to the VM object.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputDom(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    xmldocnode *doc);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
doc	IN	empty document

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding()**

Sets the encoding for the XSLTVM stream output. If the input (data) encoding is different from the one set by this APIs then encoding conversion is performed. This APIs overrides the encoding set in the XSLT stylesheet (if any).

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *encoding);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object



Parameter	In/Out	Description
encoding	IN	output encoding

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

**XmlXvmSetOutputSax()**

Set XSLTVM to output SAX. If the SAX callback interface object is provided the VM outputs the result document in a form of SAX events using the user specified callback functions.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputSax(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmlsaxcb *saxcb,
    void *saxctx);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
saxcb	IN	SAX callback object
saxctx	IN	SAX context

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code

**XmlXvmSetOutputStream()**

Set the XSLTVM output to a user-defined stream. The default XSLTVM output is a stream. This APIs overrides the default stream with user specified APIs for writing.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetOutputStream(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmlostream *ostream);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object

Parameter	In/Out	Description
ostream	IN	stream object

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

**XmlXvmSetTextParam()**

Set the stylesheet top-level text parameter. The parameter value set in the XSLT stylesheet is overwritten. Since the top-level parameters are reset with stylesheet values after each transformation, this APIs has to be called again.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmSetTextParam(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *name,  
    oratext *value);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
name	IN	name of top-level parameter
value	IN	value of top-level parameter

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code, XMLERR\_SUCC [0] on success.

**XmlXvmTransformBuffer()**

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in memory. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX prior to this call.

**Syntax**

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformBuffer(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *buffer,  
    ub4 length,  
    oratext *baseURI);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
buffer	IN	NULL-terminated buffer that contains the XML document
length	IN	length of the XML document
baseURI	IN	base URI of XML document

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code.

---



---

#### See Also:

[XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlXvmTransformDom()

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document as DOM. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformDom(
    xmlxvm *vm,
    xmldocnode *root);
```

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
root	IN	root element of XML document's DOM

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code.

---



---

#### See Also:

[XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#)

---



---

## XmlXvmTransformFile()

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document in file. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformFile(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *path,  
    oratext *baseURI);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
path	IN	path of XML document to transform
baseURI	IN	base URI of XML document

---

### Returns

(xmlerr) error code

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmTransformURI\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)

---

## XmlXvmTransformURI()

Run compiled XSLT stylesheet on XML document from URI. The compiled XSLT stylesheet (bytecode) should be set using `XmlXvmSetBytecodeXXX` prior to this call.

### Syntax

```
xmlerr XmlXvmTransformURI(  
    xmlxvm *vm,  
    oratext *uri);
```

---

Parameter	In/Out	Description
vm	IN	VM object
uri	IN	URI of XML document to transform

---

**Returns**

(xmlerr) error code.

---

---

**See Also:**

[XmlXvmTransformFile\(\)](#), [XmlXvmTransformBuffer\(\)](#),  
[XmlXvmTransformDom\(\)](#)

---

---



---

# Mapping of APIs used before Oracle Database 10g Release 1

Here are the mappings between XML C APIs that were available in Oracle Database Oracle9i Release, and the current Unified XML C APIs that became available in subsequent Oracle Database.

---

**See Also:**

Format Models in *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*

---

## C Package Changes

Pre-existing C APIs were available through the `oraxml` package. It had the following characteristics:

- Specification is limited to a one-to-one mapping between the xml context (`xmlctx`) and an xml document. Only one document can be accessed by DOM at any one time, however the data of multiple documents can be concurrent.
- The APIs are not always consistent, and don't always follow the declarations of the `xmlctx`.

In contrast, the new unified C APIs solve these problems:

- Multiple independent documents share the `xmlctx`.
- All APIs conform to the declarations of the `xmlctx`.
- Each document can be accessed simultaneously by DOM until explicitly destroyed by an `XmlDestroy()` call.

## Initializing and Parsing Sequence Changes

The initialization and parsing of documents has changed in the Unified C API.

### **Example A-1 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Pre-Unified C API, One Document at a Time**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse documents, one at a time, using the old C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A-2](#).

```
#include <oraxml.h>
uword err;
xmlctx *ctx = xmlinit(&err, options);
for (;;)
{
    err = xmlparse(ctx, URI, options);
}
```

```

...
/* DOM operations */
...
/* recycle memory from document */
xmlclean(ctx);
}
xmlterm(ctx);

```

**Example A-2 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Unified C API, One Document at a Time**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse documents, one at a time, using the new C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A-1](#).

```

#include <xml.h>
xmlerr err;
xmlDocNode *doc;
xmlctx *xctx = XmlCreate(&err, options, NULL);
for (;;)
{
    doc = XmlLoadDom(xctx, &err, "URI", URI, NULL);
    ...
    /* DOM operations */
    ...
    XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc);
}
XmlDestroy(xctx);

```

**Example A-3 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Pre-Unified C API, Multiple Documents and Simultaneous DOM Access**

The following pseudo-code demonstrates how to initialize and parse multiple documents with simultaneous DOM access using the old C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A-4](#).

```

xmlctx *ctx1 = xmlInitenc(&err, options);
xmlctx *ctx2 = xmlInitenc(&err, options);
err = xmlParse(ctx1, URI_1, options);
err = xmlParse(ctx2, URI_2, options);
...
/* DOM operations for both documents */
...
xmlterm(ctx1);
xmlterm(ctx2);

```

**Example A-4 Initializing and Parsing Sequence for the Unified C API, Multiple Documents and Simultaneous DOM Access**

The following pseudo-code example demonstrates how to initialize and parse multiple documents with simultaneous DOM access using the new C APIs. Contrast this with [Example A-3](#).

```

xmlDocNode *doc1;
xmlDocNode *doc2;
xmlctx *xctx = XmlCreate(&err, options, NULL);
doc1 = XmlLoadDom(xctx, &err, "URI", URI_1, NULL);
doc2 = XmlLoadDom(xctx, &err, "URI", URI_2, NULL);
...
/* DOM operations for both documents*/
...
XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc1);
XmlFreeDocument(xctx, doc2);

```



```
...
XmlDestroy(xctx);
```

## Datatype Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages

[Table A-1](#) outlines the changes made to datatypes for the new C API.

**Table A-1 Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package**

oraxml Supported Datatype	xml Supported Datatype
uword	xmlerr
xmlacctype	xmlurlacc
xmlattrnode	xmlattrnode
xmlcdatanode	xmlcdatanode
xmlcommentnode	xmlcommentnode
xmlctx	xmlctx
xmldocnode	xmldocnode
xmlDOMimp	Obsolete. Use xmlctx.
xmltdnode	xmltdnode
xmlemnode	xmlemnode
xmlentnode	xmlentnode
xmlentrefnode	xmlentrefnode
xmlflags	ub4
xmlfragnode	xmlfragnode
xmlhdl	xmlurlhdl

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package**

<b>oraxml Supported Datatype</b>	<b>xml Supported Datatype</b>
xmlmemcb	Use individual function pointers.
xmlnode	xmlnode
xmlnodes	xmlodelist, xmlnamedmap
xmlnotenode	xmlnotenode
xmlntype	xmlnodetype
xmlpflags	ub4
xmlpinode	xmlpinode
xmlsaxcb	xmlsaxcb
xmlstream	xmlstream, xmliostream
xmltextnode	xmltextnode
xpctx	xpctx
xpexpr	xpexpr
xpnset	Obsolete.UseXmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNum() and XmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNode().
xpnsetele	Obsolete.UseXmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNum() and XmlXPathGetObjectNSetsNode().
xpobj	xpobj
xpobjtyp	xmlxslobjtype
xslctx	xslctx

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Datatypes Supported by oraxml Package versus xml Package**

oraxml Supported Datatype	xml Supported Datatype
xsloutputmethod	xmlxsloutputmethod

## Method Mapping between oraxml and xml Packages

[Table A-2](#) outlines the changes made to the methods of the new C API.

**Table A-2 Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

Package oraxml Method	Package xml Method(s)
appendChild()	XmlDomAppendChild()
appendData()	XmlDomAppendData()
cloneNode()	XmlDomCloneNode()
createAttribute()	XmlDomCreateAttr()
createAttributeNS()	XmlDomCreateAttrNS()
createCDATASection()	XmlDomCreateCDATA()
createComment()	XmlDomCreateComment()
createDocument()	XmlCreateDocument()
createDocumentFragment()	XmlDomCreateFragment()
createDocumentNS()	XmlCreateDocument()
createDocumentType()	XmlCreateDTD()
createElement()	XmlDomCreateElem()
createElementNS()	XmlDomCreateElemNS()

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
<code>createEntityReference()</code>	<code>XmlDomCreateEntityRef()</code>
<code>createProcessingInstruction()</code>	<code>XmlDomCreatePI()</code>
<code>createTextNode()</code>	<code>XmlDomCreateText()</code>
<code>deleteData()</code>	<code>XmlDomDeleteData()</code>
<code>freeElements()</code>	<code>XmlDomFreeNodeList()</code>
<code>getAttribute()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttr()</code>
<code>getAttributeIndex()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrs()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodeMapItem()</code>
<code>getAttributeNode()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrNode()</code>
<code>getAttributes()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrs()</code>
<code>getAttrLocal()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrLocal()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen()</code>
<code>getAttrName()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrName()</code>
<code>getAttrNamespace()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrURI()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetAttrURILen()</code>
<code>getAttrPrefix()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrPrefix()</code>
<code>getAttrQualified_name()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrName()</code>
<code>getAttrSpecified()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrSpecified()</code>
<code>getAttrValue()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetAttrValue()</code>
<code>getCharData()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetCharData()</code>

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
getChildNode()	XmlDomGetChildNode()
getChildNodes()	XmlDomGetChildNodes()
getContentModel()	XmlDomGetContentModel()
getDocType()	XmlDomGetDTD()
getDocTypeEntities()	XmlDomGetDTDEntities()
getDocTypeName()	XmlDomGetDTDName()
getDocTypeNotations()	XmlDomGetDTDNotations()
getDocument()	Obsolete; document returned by XmlLoadDomxxxx() calls
getDocumentElement()	XmlDomGetDoctElem()
getElementById()	XmlDomGetElemById()
getElementsByTagName()	XmlDomGetElemsByTag()
getElementsByTagNameNS()	XmlDomGetElemsByTag()
getEncoding()	XmlDomGetEncoding()
getEntityNotation()	XmlDomGetEntityNotation()
getEntityPubID()	XmlDomGetEntityPubID()
getEntitySysID()	XmlDomGetEntitySysID()
getFirstChild()	XmlDomGetFirstChild()

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
<code>getImplementation()</code>	Obsolete; use <code>xmlctx</code> instead of <code>DOMImplementation</code>
<code>getLastChild()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetLastChild()</code>
<code>getNamedItem()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNamedItem()</code>
<code>getNextSibling()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNextSibling()</code>
<code>getNodeLocal()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeLocal()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen()</code>
<code>getNodeMapLength()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeMapLength()</code>
<code>getNodeName()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeName()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodeNameLen()</code>
<code>getNodeNamespace()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeURI()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodeURILen()</code>
<code>getNodePrefix()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodePrefix()</code>
<code>getNodeQualifiedName()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodedName()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodedNameLen()</code>
<code>getNodeType()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeType()</code>
<code>getNodeValue()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNodeValue()</code> , <code>XmlDomGetNodeValueLen()</code>
<code>getNotationPubID()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNotationPubID()</code>
<code>getNotationSysID()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetNotationSysID()</code>
<code>getOwnerDocument()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetOwnerDocument()</code>
<code>getParentNode()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetParentNode()</code>
<code>getPIData()</code>	<code>XmlDomGetPIData()</code>

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
getPITarget()	XmlDomGetPITarget()
getPreviousSibling()	XmlDomGetPrevSibling()
getTagName()	XmlDomGetTagName()
hasAttributes()	XmlDomHasAttrs()
hasChildNodes()	XmlDomHasChildNodes()
hasFeature()	XmlHasFeature()
importNode()	XmlDomImportNode()
insertBefore()	XmlDomInsertBefore()
insertData()	XmlDomInsertData()
isSingleChar()	XmlIsSimple()
isStandalone()	XmlDomGetDecl()
isUnicode()	XmlDomIsUnicode()
nodeValid()	XmlDomValidate()
normalize()	XmlDomNormalize()
numAttributes()	XmlDomNumAttrs()
numChildNodes()	XmlDomNumChildNodes()
prefixToURI()	XmlDomPrefixToURI()

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
printBuffer()	XmlSaveDomBuffer()
printBufferEnc()	XmlSaveDomBuffer()
printCallback()	XmlSaveDomStream()
printCallbackEnc()	XmlSaveDomStream()
printSize()	XmlSaveDomSize()
printSizeEnc()	XmlSaveDomSize()
printStream()	XmlSaveDomStdio()
printStreamEnc()	XmlSaveDomStdio()
removeAttribute()	XmlDomRemoveAttr()
removeAttributeNode()	XmlDomRemoveAttrNode()
removeChild()	XmlDomRemoveChild()
removeNamedItem()	XmlDomRemoveNamedItem()
replaceChild()	XmlDomReplaceChild()
replaceData()	XmlDomReplaceData()
saveString2()	XmlDomSaveString2()
saveString()	XmlDomSaveString()
setAttribute()	XmlDomSetAttr()



**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
setAttributeNode()	XmlDomSetAttrNode()
setAttrValue()	XmlDomSetAttrValue()
setCharData()	XmlDomSetCharData()
setNamedItem()	XmlDomSetNamedItem()
setNodeValue()	XmlDomSetNodeValue(), XmlDomSetNodeValueLen()
setPIData()	XmlDomSetPIData()
splitText()	XmlDomSplitText()
substringData()	XmlDomSubstringData()
xmlaccess()	XmlAccess()
xmlinit()	XmlCreate()
xmlinitenc()	XmlCreate()
xmlparse()	XmlLoadDomURI()
xmlparsebuf()	XmlLoadDomBuffer()
xmlparsedtd()	Obsolete; use XML_LOAD_FLAG_DTD_ONLY flag in XmlLoadXXX() calls.
xmlparsefile()	XmlLoadDomFile()
xmlparsestream()	XmlLoadDomStream()
xmlterm()	XmlDestroy()

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
xpevalxpathexpr()	XmlXPathEval()
xpfreexpathctx()	XmlXPathDeleteCtx()
xpgetbooleanval()	XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean()
xpgetfirstnsetelem()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnextnsetelem()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnsetelemnode()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnsetval()	XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum()
xpgetnumval()	XmlXPathGetObjectNumber()
xpgetrtfragval()	XmlXPathGetObjectFragment()
xpgetstrval()	XmlXPathGetObjectString()
xpgetxobjtyp()	XmlXPathGetObjectType()
xpmakexpathctx()	XmlXPathCreateCtx()
xpparsexpathexpr()	XmlXPathParse()
xslgetbaseuri()	XmlXslGetBaseURI()
xslgetoutputdomctx()	XmlXslGetOutputDom()
xslgetoutputsax()	Unnecessary
xslgetoutputstream()	Unnecessary

**Table A-2 (Cont.) Methods of the oraxml Package versus the xml Package**

<b>Package oraxml Method</b>	<b>Package xml Method(s)</b>
xslgetresultdocfrag()	XmlXslGetOutputFragment()
xslgettextparam()	XmlXslGetTextParam()
xslgetxslctx()	Unnecessary
xslinit()	XmlXslCreateCtx()
xslprocess()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprocessex()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprocessxml()	XmlXslProcess()
xslprocessxmldocfrag()	XmlXslProcess()
xslresetallparams()	XmlXslResetAllParams()
xslsetoutputdomctx()	XmlXslSetOutputDom()
xslsetoutputencoding()	XmlXslSetOutputEncoding()
xslsetoutputmethod()	XmlXslSetOutputMethod()
xslsetoutputsax()	XmlXslSetOutputSax()
xslsetoutputsaxctx()	XmlXslSetOutputSax()
xslsetoutputstream()	XmlXslSetOutputStream()
xslsettextparam()	XmlXslSetTextParam()
xslterm()	XmlXslDeleteCtx()



---

---

# Index

## C

### C package methods

- XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback, [2-1](#)
- XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback, [2-1](#)
- XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback, [2-1](#)
- XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback, [2-1](#)
- XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback, [2-2](#)
- XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback, [2-2](#)
- XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback, [2-2](#)
- XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package Callback, [2-2](#)
- XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F in package Callback, [2-2](#)
- XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F in package Callback, [2-3](#)
- XmlAccess in package XML, [11-2](#)
- XmlCreate in package XML, [11-3](#)
- XmlCreateDocument in package XML, [11-6](#)
- XmlCreateDTD in package XML, [11-5](#)
- XmlDestroy in package XML, [11-6](#)
- XmlDiff in package XML, [11-7](#)
- XmlDiff in package XmlDiff, [12-1](#)
- XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F in package Traversal, [10-3](#)
- XmlDomAppendChild in package DOM, [3-66](#)
- XmlDomAppendData in package DOM, [3-12](#)
- XmlDomCleanNode in package DOM, [3-67](#)
- XmlDomCloneNode in package DOM, [3-68](#)
- XmlDomCreateAttr in package DOM, [3-19](#)
- XmlDomCreateAttrNS in package DOM, [3-20](#)
- XmlDomCreateCDATA in package DOM, [3-21](#)
- XmlDomCreateComment in package DOM, [3-22](#)
- XmlDomCreateElem in package DOM, [3-22](#)
- XmlDomCreateElemNS in package DOM, [3-23](#)
- XmlDomCreateEntityRef in package DOM, [3-24](#)
- XmlDomCreateFragment in package DOM, [3-25](#)
- XmlDomCreateNodeFilter in package Traversal, [10-1](#)
- XmlDomCreatePI in package DOM, [3-25](#)
- XmlDomCreateRange in package Range, [6-2](#)
- XmlDomCreateText in package DOM, [3-26](#)

### C package methods (*continued*)

- XmlDomCreateTreeWalker in package Traversal, [10-2](#)
- XmlDomDeleteData in package DOM, [3-13](#)
- XmlDomFreeNode in package DOM, [3-68](#)
- XmlDomFreeNodeList in package DOM, [3-99](#)
- XmlDomFreeString in package DOM, [3-27](#)
- XmlDomGetAttr in package DOM, [3-44](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrLocal in package DOM, [3-2](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen in package DOM, [3-2](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrName in package DOM, [3-3](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrNameLen in package DOM, [3-4](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrNode in package DOM, [3-45](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS in package DOM, [3-45](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrNS in package DOM, [3-44](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrPrefix in package DOM, [3-5](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrs in package DOM, [3-69](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrSpecified in package DOM, [3-5](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrURI in package DOM, [3-6](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrURILen in package DOM, [3-7](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrValue in package DOM, [3-8](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrValueLen in package DOM, [3-8](#)
- XmlDomGetAttrValueStream in package DOM, [3-9](#)
- XmlDomGetBaseURI in package DOM, [3-27](#)
- XmlDomGetCharData in package DOM, [3-13](#)
- XmlDomGetCharDataLength in package DOM, [3-14](#)
- XmlDomGetChildNodes in package DOM, [3-69](#)
- XmlDomGetChildrenByTag in package DOM, [3-46](#)
- XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS in package DOM, [3-47](#)
- XmlDomGetDecl in package DOM, [3-29](#)
- XmlDomGetDefaultNS in package DOM, [3-70](#)
- XmlDomGetDocElem in package DOM, [3-29](#)
- XmlDomGetDocElemByID in package DOM, [3-30](#)
- XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag in package DOM, [3-31](#)
- XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS in package DOM, [3-31](#)
- XmlDomGetDTD in package DOM, [3-28](#)
- XmlDomGetDTDEntities in package DOM, [3-39](#)

## C package methods (*continued*)

XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset in package DOM, [3-40](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDName in package DOM, [3-41](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDNotations in package DOM, [3-41](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDPubID in package DOM, [3-42](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDSysID in package DOM, [3-42](#)  
XmlDomGetElemsByTag in package DOM, [3-48](#)  
XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS in package DOM, [3-48](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityNotation in package DOM, [3-56](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityPubID in package DOM, [3-56](#)  
XmlDomGetEntitySysID in package DOM, [3-57](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityType in package DOM, [3-57](#)  
XmlDomGetFirstChild in package DOM, [3-70](#)  
XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair in package DOM, [3-71](#)  
XmlDomGetLastChild in package DOM, [3-72](#)  
XmlDomGetLastError in package DOM, [3-32](#)  
XmlDomGetNamedItem in package DOM, [3-58](#)  
XmlDomGetNamedItemNS in package DOM, [3-59](#)  
XmlDomGetNextPfnPair in package DOM, [3-72](#)  
XmlDomGetNextSibling in package DOM, [3-73](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeListItem in package DOM, [3-99](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeListLength in package DOM, [3-100](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeLocal in package DOM, [3-73](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen in package DOM, [3-74](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeMapItem in package DOM, [3-60](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeMapLength in package DOM, [3-61](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeName in package DOM, [3-75](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeNameLen in package DOM, [3-76](#)  
XmlDomGetNodePrefix in package DOM, [3-77](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeType in package DOM, [3-77](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeURI in package DOM, [3-78](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeURILen in package DOM, [3-79](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValue in package DOM, [3-80](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValueLen in package DOM, [3-81](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValueStream in package DOM, [3-82](#)  
XmlDomGetNotationPubID in package DOM, [3-100](#)  
XmlDomGetNotationSysID in package DOM, [3-101](#)  
XmlDomGetOwnerDocument in package DOM, [3-82](#)  
XmlDomGetOwnerElem in package DOM, [3-10](#)  
XmlDomGetParentNode in package DOM, [3-83](#)  
XmlDomGetPIData in package DOM, [3-102](#)  
XmlDomGetPITarget in package DOM, [3-102](#)

## C package methods (*continued*)

XmlDomGetPrevSibling in package DOM, [3-83](#)  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM, [3-84](#)  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM, [3-84](#)  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM, [3-85](#)  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM, [3-85](#)  
XmlDomGetSchema in package DOM, [3-33](#)  
XmlDomGetSourceEntity in package DOM, [3-86](#)  
XmlDomGetSourceLine in package DOM, [3-86](#)  
XmlDomGetSourceLocation in package DOM, [3-87](#)  
XmlDomGetTag in package DOM, [3-49](#)  
XmlDomHasAttr in package DOM, [3-50](#)  
XmlDomHasAttrNS in package DOM, [3-50](#)  
XmlDomHasAttrs in package DOM, [3-87](#)  
XmlDomHasChildNodes in package DOM, [3-87](#)  
XmlDomImportNode in package DOM, [3-33](#)  
XmlDomInsertBefore in package DOM, [3-88](#)  
XmlDomInsertData in package DOM, [3-15](#)  
XmlDomIsSchemaBased in package DOM, [3-34](#)  
XmlDomIterDetach in package Traversal, [10-4](#)  
XmlDomIterNextNode in package Traversal, [10-5](#)  
XmlDomIterPrevNode in package Traversal, [10-5](#)  
XmlDomNormalize in package DOM, [3-89](#)  
XmlDomNumAttrs in package DOM, [3-89](#)  
XmlDomNumChildNodes in package DOM, [3-89](#)  
XmlDomPrefixToURI in package DOM, [3-90](#)  
XmlDomRangeClone in package Range, [6-2](#)  
XmlDomRangeCloneContents in package Range, [6-3](#)  
XmlDomRangeCollapse in package Range, [6-3](#)  
XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints in package Range, [6-4](#)  
XmlDomRangeDeleteContents in package Range, [6-5](#)  
XmlDomRangeDetach in package Range, [6-5](#)  
XmlDomRangeExtractContents in package Range, [6-5](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed in package Range, [6-6](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor in package Range, [6-6](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetDetached in package Range, [6-7](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer in package Range, [6-7](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset in package Range, [6-8](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer in package Range, [6-8](#)  
XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset in package Range, [6-9](#)  
XmlDomRangeIsConsistent in package Range, [6-9](#)

C package methods (*continued*)

XmlDomRangeSelectNode in package Range, [6-10](#)  
XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents in package Range, [6-10](#)  
XmlDomRangeSetEnd in package Range, [6-11](#)  
XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore in package Range, [6-12](#)  
XmlDomRangeSetStart in package Range, [6-12](#)  
XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter in package Range, [6-13](#)  
XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore in package Range, [6-13](#)  
XmlDomRemoveAttr in package DOM, [3-51](#)  
XmlDomRemoveAttrNode in package DOM, [3-52](#)  
XmlDomRemoveAttrNS in package DOM, [3-52](#)  
XmlDomRemoveChild in package DOM, [3-90](#)  
XmlDomRemoveNamedItem in package DOM, [3-61](#)  
XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS in package DOM, [3-62](#)  
XmlDomRenameNode in package DOM, [3-91](#)  
XmlDomRenameNodeNS in package DOM, [3-92](#)  
XmlDomReplaceChild in package DOM, [3-92](#)  
XmlDomReplaceData in package DOM, [3-15](#)  
XmlDomSaveString in package DOM, [3-35](#)  
XmlDomSaveString2 in package DOM, [3-36](#)  
XmlDomSetAttr in package DOM, [3-53](#)  
XmlDomSetAttrNode in package DOM, [3-54](#)  
XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS in package DOM, [3-55](#)  
XmlDomSetAttrNS in package DOM, [3-54](#)  
XmlDomSetAttrValue in package DOM, [3-10](#)  
XmlDomSetAttrValueStream in package DOM, [3-11](#)  
XmlDomSetBaseURI in package DOM, [3-36](#)  
XmlDomSetCharData in package DOM, [3-16](#)  
XmlDomSetDefaultNS in package DOM, [3-93](#)  
XmlDomSetDocOrder in package DOM, [3-38](#)  
XmlDomSetDTD in package DOM, [3-37](#)  
XmlDomSetLastError in package DOM, [3-38](#)  
XmlDomSetNamedItem in package DOM, [3-62](#)  
XmlDomSetNamedItemNS in package DOM, [3-63](#)  
XmlDomSetNodePrefix in package DOM, [3-93](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValue in package DOM, [3-94](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValueLen in package DOM, [3-95](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValueStream in package DOM, [3-95](#)  
XmlDomSetPIData in package DOM, [3-103](#)  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM, [3-96](#)  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM, [3-96](#)  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM, [3-97](#)  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM, [3-97](#)

C package methods (*continued*)

XmlDomSplitText in package DOM, [3-104](#)  
XmlDomSubstringData in package DOM, [3-17](#)  
XmlDomSync in package DOM, [3-39](#)  
XmlDomValidate in package DOM, [3-98](#)  
XmlDomWalkerFirstChild in package Traversal, [10-7](#)  
XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode in package Traversal, [10-7](#)  
XmlDomWalkerGetRoot in package Traversal, [10-8](#)  
XmlDomWalkerLastChild in package Traversal, [10-8](#)  
XmlDomWalkerNextNode in package Traversal, [10-9](#)  
XmlDomWalkerNextSibling in package Traversal, [10-9](#)  
XmlDomWalkerParentNode in package Traversal, [10-10](#)  
XmlDomWalkerPrevNode in package Traversal, [10-11](#)  
XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling in package Traversal, [10-11](#)  
XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode in package Traversal, [10-12](#)  
XmlDomWalkerSetRoot in package Traversal, [10-13](#)  
XmlEvCleanPPCtx in package Event, [4-5](#)  
XmlEvCreatePPCtx in package Event, [4-6](#)  
XmlEvCreateSVCtx in package Event, [4-7](#)  
XmlEvDestroyPPCtx in package Event, [4-8](#)  
XmlEvDestroySVCtx in package Event, [4-8](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrCount in package Event, [4-9](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody in package Event, [4-9](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0 in package Event, [4-10](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount in package Event, [4-10](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName in package Event, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName0 in package Event, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName in package Event, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0 in package Event, [4-12](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName in package Event, [4-12](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0 in package Event, [4-13](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix in package Event, [4-13](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0 in package Event, [4-14](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrID in package Event, [4-14](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName in package Event, [4-15](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0 in package Event, [4-15](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrName in package Event, [4-16](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrName0 in package Event, [4-16](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix in package Event, [4-17](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0 in package Event, [4-17](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrURI in package Event, [4-18](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrURI0 in package Event, [4-18](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrUriID in package Event, [4-19](#)

## C package methods (*continued*)

- XmlEvGetAttrValue in package Event, [4-19](#)
- XmlEvGetAttrValue0 in package Event, [4-20](#)
- XmlEvGetElDeclContent in package Event, [4-20](#)
- XmlEvGetElDeclContent0 in package Event, [4-21](#)
- XmlEvGetEncoding in package Event, [4-21](#)
- XmlEvGetError in package Event, [4-21](#)
- XmlEvGetLocalName in package Event, [4-23](#)
- XmlEvGetLocalName0 in package Event, [4-23](#)
- XmlEvGetLocation in package Event, [4-24](#)
- XmlEvGetName in package Event, [4-22](#)
- XmlEvGetName0 in package Event, [4-22](#)
- XmlEvGetPEisGen in package Event, [4-26](#)
- XmlEvGetPERepl in package Event, [4-26](#)
- XmlEvGetPERepl0 in package Event, [4-27](#)
- XmlEvGetPIData in package Event, [4-24](#)
- XmlEvGetPIData0 in package Event, [4-25](#)
- XmlEvGetPITarget in package Event, [4-25](#)
- XmlEvGetPITarget0 in package Event, [4-26](#)
- XmlEvGetPrefix in package Event, [4-27](#)
- XmlEvGetPrefix0 in package Event, [4-28](#)
- XmlEvGetPubId in package Event, [4-28](#)
- XmlEvGetPubId0 in package Event, [4-29](#)
- XmlEvGetSysId in package Event, [4-29](#)
- XmlEvGetSysId0 in package Event, [4-30](#)
- XmlEvGetTagID in package Event, [4-30](#)
- XmlEvGetTagUriID in package Event, [4-31](#)
- XmlEvGetText in package Event, [4-31](#)
- XmlEvGetText0 in package Event, [4-32](#)
- XmlEvGetUENdata in package Event, [4-32](#)
- XmlEvGetUENdata0 in package Event, [4-33](#)
- XmlEvGetURI in package Event, [4-33](#)
- XmlEvGetURI0 in package Event, [4-34](#)
- XmlEvGetVersion in package Event, [4-34](#)
- XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified in package Event, [4-34](#)
- XmlEvIsStandalone in package Event, [4-35](#)
- XmlEvLoadPPDoc in package Event, [4-36](#)
- XmlEvNamespaceAttr in package Event, [4-35](#)
- XmlEvNext in package Event, [4-36](#)
- XmlEvNextTag in package Event, [4-36](#)
- XmlEvSchemaValidate in package Event, [4-37](#)
- XmlFreeDocument in package XML, [11-8](#)
- XmlGetEncoding in package XML, [11-9](#)
- XmlHasFeature in package XML, [11-9](#)
- XmlHash in package XmlDiff, [12-3](#)
- XmlIsSimple in package XML, [11-10](#)
- XmlIsUnicode in package XML, [11-10](#)
- XmlLoadDom in package XML, [11-11](#)
- XmlLoadSax in package XML, [11-12](#)
- XmlLoadSaxVA in package XML, [11-13](#)
- XmlPatch in package XmlDiff, [12-4](#)
- XmlSaveDom in package XML, [11-14](#)
- XmlSaxAttributeDecl in package SAX, [7-2](#)
- XmlSaxBeginGen in package SAX, [7-2](#)
- XmlSaxCDATA in package SAX, [7-3](#)

## C package methods (*continued*)

- XmlSaxCharacters in package SAX, [7-3](#)
- XmlSaxComment in package SAX, [7-4](#)
- XmlSaxElementDecl in package SAX, [7-4](#)
- XmlSaxEndDocument in package SAX, [7-5](#)
- XmlSaxEndElement in package SAX, [7-6](#)
- XmlSaxEndGen in package SAX, [7-6](#)
- XmlSaxNotationDecl in package SAX, [7-6](#)
- XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl in package SAX, [7-7](#)
- XmlSaxPI in package SAX, [7-6](#)
- XmlSaxStartDocument in package SAX, [7-8](#)
- XmlSaxStartElement in package SAX, [7-8](#)
- XmlSaxStartElementNS in package SAX, [7-9](#)
- XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl in package SAX, [7-10](#)
- XmlSaxWhitespace in package SAX, [7-10](#)
- XmlSaxXmlDecl in package SAX, [7-11](#)
- XmlSchemaClean in package Schema, [8-8](#)
- XmlSchemaCreate in package Schema, [8-1](#)
- XmlSchemaDestroy in package Schema, [8-2](#)
- XmlSchemaErrorWhere in package Schema, [8-2](#)
- XmlSchemaLoad in package Schema, [8-3](#)
- XmlSchemaLoadedList in package Schema, [8-4](#)
- XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler in package Schema, [8-4](#)
- XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions in package Schema, [8-5](#)
- XmlSchemaTargetNamespace in package Schema, [8-6](#)
- XmlSchemaUnload in package Schema, [8-6](#)
- XmlSchemaValidate in package Schema, [8-7](#)
- XmlSchemaVersion in package Schema, [8-8](#)
- XmlSoapAddBodyElement in package SOAP, [9-2](#)
- XmlSoapAddFaultReason in package SOAP, [9-3](#)
- XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail in package SOAP, [9-4](#)
- XmlSoapAddHeaderElement in package SOAP, [9-4](#)
- XmlSoapCall in package SOAP, [9-5](#)
- XmlSoapCreateConnection in package SOAP, [9-6](#)
- XmlSoapCreateCtx in package SOAP, [9-7](#)
- XmlSoapCreateMsg in package SOAP, [9-8](#)
- XmlSoapDestroyConnection in package SOAP, [9-9](#)
- XmlSoapDestroyCtx in package SOAP, [9-9](#)
- XmlSoapDestroyMsg in package SOAP, [9-10](#)
- XmlSoapError in package SOAP, [9-10](#)
- XmlSoapGetBody in package SOAP, [9-11](#)
- XmlSoapGetBodyElement in package SOAP, [9-11](#)
- XmlSoapGetEnvelope in package SOAP, [9-12](#)
- XmlSoapGetFault in package SOAP, [9-13](#)
- XmlSoapGetHeader in package SOAP, [9-14](#)
- XmlSoapGetHeaderElement in package SOAP, [9-14](#)
- XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand in package SOAP, [9-15](#)
- XmlSoapGetReasonLang in package SOAP, [9-16](#)



## C package methods (*continued*)

XmlSoapGetReasonNum in package SOAP, [9-16](#)  
XmlSoapGetRelay in package SOAP, [9-17](#)  
XmlSoapGetRole in package SOAP, [9-17](#)  
XmlSoapHasFault in package SOAP, [9-18](#)  
XmlSoapSetFault in package SOAP, [9-19](#)  
XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand in package SOAP, [9-20](#)  
XmlSoapSetRelay in package SOAP, [9-20](#)  
XmlSoapSetRole in package SOAP, [9-21](#)  
XmlVersion in package XML, [11-15](#)  
XmlXPathCreateCtx in package XPath, [13-1](#)  
XmlXPathDestroyCtx in package XPath, [13-2](#)  
XmlXPathEval in package XPath, [13-2](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean in package XPath, [13-3](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectFragment in package XPath, [13-3](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode in package XPath, [13-4](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum in package XPath, [13-4](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNumber in package XPath, [13-5](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectString in package XPath, [13-5](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectType in package XPath, [13-6](#)  
XmlXPathParse in package XPath, [13-6](#)  
XmlXPathPointerEval in package XPath, [14-1](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetNode in package XPath, [14-2](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetPoint in package XPath, [14-2](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetRange in package XPath, [14-3](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetType in package XPath, [14-3](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetFree in package XPath, [14-4](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetGetItem in package XPath, [14-4](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetGetLength in package XPath, [14-5](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocToString in package XPath, [14-3](#)  
XmlXsltCreate in package XSLT, [15-1](#)  
XmlXsltDestroy in package XSLT, [15-2](#)  
XmlXsltGetBaseURI in package XSLT, [15-2](#)  
XmlXsltGetOutput in package XSLT, [15-3](#)  
XmlXsltGetStylesheetDom in package XSLT, [15-3](#)  
XmlXsltGetTextParam in package XSLT, [15-3](#)  
XmlXsltProcess in package XSLT, [15-4](#)  
XmlXsltResetAllParams in package XSLT, [15-4](#)  
XmlXsltSetOutputDom in package XSLT, [15-5](#)  
XmlXsltSetOutputEncoding in package XSLT, [15-5](#)  
XmlXsltSetOutputMethod in package XSLT, [15-5](#)  
XmlXsltSetOutputSax in package XSLT, [15-6](#)  
XmlXsltSetOutputStream in package XSLT, [15-6](#)  
XmlXsltSetTextParam in package XSLT, [15-7](#)  
XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F in package XSLTVM, [16-7](#)  
XmlXvmCompileBuffer in package XSLTVM, [16-1](#)  
XmlXvmCompileDom in package XSLTVM, [16-2](#)  
XmlXvmCompileFile in package XSLTVM, [16-2](#)

## C package methods (*continued*)

XmlXvmCompileURI in package XSLTVM, [16-3](#)  
XmlXvmCompileXPath in package XSLTVM, [16-4](#)  
XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM, [16-8](#)  
XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM, [16-8](#)  
XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package XSLTVM, [16-9](#)  
XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package XSLTVM, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package XSLTVM, [16-9](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package XSLTVM, [16-10](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package XSLTVM, [16-10](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package XSLTVM, [16-11](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectString in package XSLTVM, [16-11](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectType in package XSLTVM, [16-12](#)  
XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package XSLTVM, [16-12](#)  
XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM, [16-13](#)  
XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM, [16-13](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package XSLTVM, [16-14](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package XSLTVM, [16-14](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package XSLTVM, [16-15](#)  
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package XSLTVM, [16-15](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package XSLTVM, [16-16](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package XSLTVM, [16-16](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package XSLTVM, [16-17](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package XSLTVM, [16-17](#)  
XmlXvmSetTextParam in package XSLTVM, [16-18](#)  
XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package XSLTVM, [16-18](#)  
XmlXvmTransformDom in package XSLTVM, [16-19](#)  
XmlXvmTransformFile in package XSLTVM, [16-20](#)  
XmlXvmTransformURI in package XSLTVM, [16-20](#)

## C packages

Callback, [2-1](#)  
DOM, [3-1](#)  
Event, [4-1](#)  
Range, [6-1](#)

## C packages (*continued*)

SAX, [7-1](#)  
Schema, [8-1](#)  
SOAP, [9-1](#)  
Traversal, [10-1](#)  
XML, [11-1](#)  
XmlDiff, [12-1](#)  
XPath, [13-1](#)  
XPointer, [14-1](#)  
XSLT, [15-1](#)  
XSLTVM, [16-1](#)

Callback package for C, [2-1](#)

## D

---

DOM package for C, [3-1](#)

## E

---

Event package for C, [4-1](#)

## M

---

### methods

XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package Callback for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F in package Callback for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F in package Callback for C, [2-3](#)  
XmlAccess in package XML for C, [11-2](#)  
XmlCreate in package XML for C, [11-3](#)  
XmlCreateDocument in package XML for C, [11-6](#)  
XmlCreateDTD in package XML for C, [11-5](#)  
XmlDestroy in package XML for C, [11-6](#)  
XmlDiff in package XML for C, [11-7](#)  
XmlDiff in package XmlDiff for C, [12-1](#)  
XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F in package Traversal for C, [10-3](#)  
XmlDomAppendChild in package DOM for C, [3-66](#)  
XmlDomAppendData in package DOM for C, [3-12](#)  
XmlDomCleanNode in package DOM for C, [3-67](#)  
XmlDomCloneNode in package DOM for C, [3-68](#)  
XmlDomCreateAttr in package DOM for C, [3-19](#)

### methods (*continued*)

XmlDomCreateAttrNS in package DOM for C, [3-20](#)  
XmlDomCreateCDATA in package DOM for C, [3-21](#)  
XmlDomCreateComment in package DOM for C, [3-22](#)  
XmlDomCreateElem in package DOM for C, [3-22](#)  
XmlDomCreateElemNS in package DOM for C, [3-23](#)  
XmlDomCreateEntityRef in package DOM for C, [3-24](#)  
XmlDomCreateFragment in package DOM for C, [3-25](#)  
XmlDomCreateNodelter in package Traversal for C, [10-1](#)  
XmlDomCreatePI in package DOM for C, [3-25](#)  
XmlDomCreateRange in package Range for C, [6-2](#)  
XmlDomCreateText in package DOM for C, [3-26](#)  
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker in package Traversal for C, [10-2](#)  
XmlDomDeleteData in package DOM for C, [3-13](#)  
XmlDomFreeNode in package DOM for C, [3-68](#)  
XmlDomFreeNodeList in package DOM for C, [3-99](#)  
XmlDomFreeString in package DOM for C, [3-27](#)  
XmlDomGetAttr in package DOM for C, [3-44](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrLocal in package DOM for C, [3-2](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen in package DOM for C, [3-2](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrName in package DOM for C, [3-3](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrNameLen in package DOM for C, [3-4](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrNode in package DOM for C, [3-45](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS in package DOM for C, [3-45](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrNS in package DOM for C, [3-44](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrPrefix in package DOM for C, [3-5](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrs in package DOM for C, [3-69](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrSpecified in package DOM for C, [3-5](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrURI in package DOM for C, [3-6](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrURILen in package DOM for C, [3-7](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrValue in package DOM for C, [3-8](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrValueLen in package DOM for C, [3-8](#)  
XmlDomGetAttrValueStream in package DOM for C, [3-9](#)  
XmlDomGetBaseURI in package DOM for C, [3-27](#)  
XmlDomGetCharData in package DOM for C, [3-13](#)  
XmlDomGetCharDataLength in package DOM for C, [3-14](#)  
XmlDomGetChildNodes in package DOM for C, [3-69](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlDomGetChildrenByTag in package DOM for C, [3-46](#)  
XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS in package DOM for C, [3-47](#)  
XmlDomGetDecl in package DOM for C, [3-29](#)  
XmlDomGetDefaultNS in package DOM for C, [3-70](#)  
XmlDomGetDocElem in package DOM for C, [3-29](#)  
XmlDomGetDocElemByID in package DOM for C, [3-30](#)  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag in package DOM for C, [3-31](#)  
XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS in package DOM for C, [3-31](#)  
XmlDomGetDTD in package DOM for C, [3-28](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDEntities in package DOM for C, [3-39](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset in package DOM for C, [3-40](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDName in package DOM for C, [3-41](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDNotations in package DOM for C, [3-41](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDPubID in package DOM for C, [3-42](#)  
XmlDomGetDTDSysID in package DOM for C, [3-42](#)  
XmlDomGetElemsByTag in package DOM for C, [3-48](#)  
XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS in package DOM for C, [3-48](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityNotation in package DOM for C, [3-56](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityPubID in package DOM for C, [3-56](#)  
XmlDomGetEntitySysID in package DOM for C, [3-57](#)  
XmlDomGetEntityType in package DOM for C, [3-57](#)  
XmlDomGetFirstChild in package DOM for C, [3-70](#)  
XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair in package DOM for C, [3-71](#)  
XmlDomGetLastChild in package DOM for C, [3-72](#)  
XmlDomGetLastError in package DOM for C, [3-32](#)  
XmlDomGetNamedItem in package DOM for C, [3-58](#)  
XmlDomGetNamedItemNS in package DOM for C, [3-59](#)  
XmlDomGetNextPfnPair in package DOM for C, [3-72](#)  
XmlDomGetNextSibling in package DOM for C, [3-73](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlDomGetNodeListItem in package DOM for C, [3-99](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeListLength in package DOM for C, [3-100](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeLocal in package DOM for C, [3-73](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen in package DOM for C, [3-74](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeMapItem in package DOM for C, [3-60](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeMapLength in package DOM for C, [3-61](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeName in package DOM for C, [3-75](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeNameLen in package DOM for C, [3-76](#)  
XmlDomGetNodePrefix in package DOM for C, [3-77](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeType in package DOM for C, [3-77](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeURI in package DOM for C, [3-78](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeURILen in package DOM for C, [3-79](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValue in package DOM for C, [3-80](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValueLen in package DOM for C, [3-81](#)  
XmlDomGetNodeValueStream in package DOM for C, [3-82](#)  
XmlDomGetNotationPubID in package DOM for C, [3-100](#)  
XmlDomGetNotationSysID in package DOM for C, [3-101](#)  
XmlDomGetOwnerDocument in package DOM for C, [3-82](#)  
XmlDomGetOwnerElem in package DOM for C, [3-10](#)  
XmlDomGetParentNode in package DOM for C, [3-83](#)  
XmlDomGetPIData in package DOM for C, [3-102](#)  
XmlDomGetPITarget in package DOM for C, [3-102](#)  
XmlDomGetPrevSibling in package DOM for C, [3-83](#)  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM for C, [3-84](#)  
XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM for C, [3-84](#)  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM for C, [3-85](#)  
XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM for C, [3-85](#)  
XmlDomGetSchema in package DOM for C, [3-33](#)  
XmlDomGetSourceEntity in package DOM for C, [3-86](#)

methods (*continued*)

- XmlDomGetSourceLine in package DOM for C, [3-86](#)
- XmlDomGetSourceLocation in package DOM for C, [3-87](#)
- XmlDomGetTag in package DOM for C, [3-49](#)
- XmlDomHasAttr in package DOM for C, [3-50](#)
- XmlDomHasAttrNS in package DOM for C, [3-50](#)
- XmlDomHasAttrs in package DOM for C, [3-87](#)
- XmlDomHasChildNodes in package DOM for C, [3-87](#)
- XmlDomImportNode in package DOM for C, [3-33](#)
- XmlDomInsertBefore in package DOM for C, [3-88](#)
- XmlDomInsertData in package DOM for C, [3-15](#)
- XmlDomIsSchemaBased in package DOM for C, [3-34](#)
- XmlDomIterDetach in package Traversal for C, [10-4](#)
- XmlDomIterNextNode in package Traversal for C, [10-5](#)
- XmlDomIterPrevNode in package Traversal for C, [10-5](#)
- XmlDomNormalize in package DOM for C, [3-89](#)
- XmlDomNumAttrs in package DOM for C, [3-89](#)
- XmlDomNumChildNodes in package DOM for C, [3-89](#)
- XmlDomPrefixToURI in package DOM for C, [3-90](#)
- XmlDomRangeClone in package Range for C, [6-2](#)
- XmlDomRangeCloneContents in package Range for C, [6-3](#)
- XmlDomRangeCollapse in package Range for C, [6-3](#)
- XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints in package Range for C, [6-4](#)
- XmlDomRangeDeleteContents in package Range for C, [6-5](#)
- XmlDomRangeDetach in package Range for C, [6-5](#)
- XmlDomRangeExtractContents in package Range for C, [6-5](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed in package Range for C, [6-6](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor in package Range for C, [6-6](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetDetached in package Range for C, [6-7](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer in package Range for C, [6-7](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset in package Range for C, [6-8](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer in package Range for C, [6-8](#)
- XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset in package Range for C, [6-9](#)
- XmlDomRangeIsConsistent in package Range for C, [6-9](#)

methods (*continued*)

- XmlDomRangeSelectNode in package Range for C, [6-10](#)
- XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents in package Range for C, [6-10](#)
- XmlDomRangeSetEnd in package Range for C, [6-11](#)
- XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore in package Range for C, [6-12](#)
- XmlDomRangeSetStart in package Range for C, [6-12](#)
- XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter in package Range for C, [6-13](#)
- XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore in package Range for C, [6-13](#)
- XmlDomRemoveAttr in package DOM for C, [3-51](#)
- XmlDomRemoveAttrNode in package DOM for C, [3-52](#)
- XmlDomRemoveAttrNS in package DOM for C, [3-52](#)
- XmlDomRemoveChild in package DOM for C, [3-90](#)
- XmlDomRemoveNamedItem in package DOM for C, [3-61](#)
- XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS in package DOM for C, [3-62](#)
- XmlDomRenameNode in package DOM for C, [3-91](#)
- XmlDomRenameNodeNS in package DOM for C, [3-92](#)
- XmlDomReplaceChild in package DOM for C, [3-92](#)
- XmlDomReplaceData in package DOM for C, [3-15](#)
- XmlDomSaveString in package DOM for C, [3-35](#)
- XmlDomSaveString2 in package DOM for C, [3-36](#)
- XmlDomSetAttr in package DOM for C, [3-53](#)
- XmlDomSetAttrNode in package DOM for C, [3-54](#)
- XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS in package DOM for C, [3-55](#)
- XmlDomSetAttrNS in package DOM for C, [3-54](#)
- XmlDomSetAttrValue in package DOM for C, [3-10](#)
- XmlDomSetAttrValueStream in package DOM for C, [3-11](#)
- XmlDomSetBaseURI in package DOM for C, [3-36](#)
- XmlDomSetCharData in package DOM for C, [3-16](#)
- XmlDomSetDefaultNS in package DOM for C, [3-93](#)
- XmlDomSetDocOrder in package DOM for C, [3-38](#)
- XmlDomSetDTD in package DOM for C, [3-37](#)
- XmlDomSetLastError in package DOM for C, [3-38](#)
- XmlDomSetNamedItem in package DOM for C, [3-62](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlDomSetNamedItemNS in package DOM for C, [3-63](#)  
XmlDomSetNodePrefix in package DOM for C, [3-93](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValue in package DOM for C, [3-94](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValueLen in package DOM for C, [3-95](#)  
XmlDomSetNodeValueStream in package DOM for C, [3-95](#)  
XmlDomSetPIData in package DOM for C, [3-103](#)  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM for C, [3-96](#)  
XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM for C, [3-96](#)  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream in package DOM for C, [3-97](#)  
XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream in package DOM for C, [3-97](#)  
XmlDomSplitText in package DOM for C, [3-104](#)  
XmlDomSubstringData in package DOM for C, [3-17](#)  
XmlDomSync in package DOM for C, [3-39](#)  
XmlDomValidate in package DOM for C, [3-98](#)  
XmlDomWalkerFirstChild in package Traversal for C, [10-7](#)  
XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode in package Traversal for C, [10-7](#)  
XmlDomWalkerGetRoot in package Traversal for C, [10-8](#)  
XmlDomWalkerLastChild in package Traversal for C, [10-8](#)  
XmlDomWalkerNextNode in package Traversal for C, [10-9](#)  
XmlDomWalkerNextSibling in package Traversal for C, [10-9](#)  
XmlDomWalkerParentNode in package Traversal for C, [10-10](#)  
XmlDomWalkerPrevNode in package Traversal for C, [10-11](#)  
XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling in package Traversal for C, [10-11](#)  
XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode in package Traversal for C, [10-12](#)  
XmlDomWalkerSetRoot in package Traversal for C, [10-13](#)  
XmlEvCleanPPCtx package Event for C, [4-5](#)  
XmlEvCreatePPCtx package Event for C, [4-6](#)  
XmlEvCreateSVCtx package Event for C, [4-7](#)  
XmlEvDestroyPPCtx package Event for C, [4-8](#)  
XmlEvDestroySVCtx package Event for C, [4-8](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrCount in package Event for C, [4-9](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody in package Event for C, [4-9](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0 in package Event for C, [4-10](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount in package Event for C, [4-10](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName in package Event for C, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclEIName0 in package Event for C, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName in package Event for C, [4-11](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0 in package Event for C, [4-12](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName in package Event for C, [4-12](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0 in package Event for C, [4-13](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix in package Event for C, [4-13](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0 in package Event for C, [4-14](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrID in package Event for C, [4-14](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName in package Event for C, [4-15](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0 in package Event for C, [4-15](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrName in package Event for C, [4-16](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrName0 in package Event for C, [4-16](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix in package Event for C, [4-17](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0 in package Event for C, [4-17](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrURI in package Event for C, [4-18](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrURI0 in package Event for C, [4-18](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrUriID in package Event for C, [4-19](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrValue in package Event for C, [4-19](#)  
XmlEvGetAttrValue0 in package Event for C, [4-20](#)  
XmlEvGetElDeclContent in package Event for C, [4-20](#)  
XmlEvGetElDeclContent0 in package Event for C, [4-21](#)  
XmlEvGetEncoding in package Event for C, [4-21](#)  
XmlEvGetError in package Event for C, [4-21](#)  
XmlEvGetLocalName in package Event for C, [4-23](#)  
XmlEvGetLocalName0 in package Event for C, [4-23](#)  
XmlEvGetLocation in package Event for C, [4-24](#)  
XmlEvGetName in package Event for C, [4-22](#)  
XmlEvGetName0 in package Event for C, [4-22](#)  
XmlEvGetPERepl in package Event for C, [4-26](#)  
XmlEvGetPERepl0 in package Event for C, [4-26](#), [4-27](#)  
XmlEvGetPIData in package Event for C, [4-24](#)  
XmlEvGetPIData0 in package Event for C, [4-25](#)  
XmlEvGetPITarget in package Event for C, [4-25](#)  
XmlEvGetPITarget0 in package Event for C, [4-26](#)  
XmlEvGetPrefix in package Event for C, [4-27](#)  
XmlEvGetPrefix0 in package Event for C, [4-28](#)  
XmlEvGetPubId in package Event for C, [4-28](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlEvGetPubId0 in package Event for C, [4-29](#)  
XmlEvGetSysId in package Event for C, [4-29](#)  
XmlEvGetSysId0 in package Event for C, [4-30](#)  
XmlEvGetTagID in package Event for C, [4-30](#)  
XmlEvGetTagUriID in package Event for C, [4-31](#)  
XmlEvGetText in package Event for C, [4-31](#)  
XmlEvGetText0 in package Event for C, [4-32](#)  
XmlEvGetUENdata in package Event for C, [4-32](#)  
XmlEvGetUENdata0 in package Event for C, [4-33](#)  
XmlEvGetURI in package Event for C, [4-33](#)  
XmlEvGetURI0 in package Event for C, [4-34](#)  
XmlEvGetVersion in package Event for C, [4-34](#)  
XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified in package Event for C, [4-34](#)  
XmlEvIsStandalone in package Event for C, [4-35](#)  
XmlEvLoadPPDoc in package Event for C, [4-36](#)  
XmlEvNamespaceAttr in package Event for C, [4-35](#)  
XmlEvNext in package Event for C, [4-36](#)  
XmlEvSchemaValidate in package Event for C, [4-37](#)  
XmlFreeDocument in package XML for C, [11-8](#)  
XmlGetEncoding in package XML for C, [11-9](#)  
XmlHasFeature in package XML for C, [11-9](#)  
XmlHash in package XmlDiff for C, [12-3](#)  
XmlIsSimple in package XML for C, [11-10](#)  
XmlIsUnicode in package XML for C, [11-10](#)  
XmlLoadDom in package XML for C, [11-11](#)  
XmlLoadSax in package XML for C, [11-12](#)  
XmlLoadSaxVA in package XML for C, [11-13](#)  
XmlPatch in package XmlDiff for C, [12-4](#)  
XmlSaveDom in package XML for C, [11-14](#)  
XmlSaxAttributeDecl in package SAX for C, [7-2](#)  
XmlSaxBeginGen in package SAX for C, [7-2](#)  
XmlSaxCDATA in package SAX for C, [7-3](#)  
XmlSaxCharacters in package SAX for C, [7-3](#)  
XmlSaxComment in package SAX for C, [7-4](#)  
XmlSaxElementDecl in package SAX for C, [7-4](#)  
XmlSaxEndDocument in package SAX for C, [7-5](#)  
XmlSaxEndElement in package SAX for C, [7-6](#)  
XmlSaxEndGen in package SAX for C, [7-6](#)  
XmlSaxNotationDecl in package SAX for C, [7-6](#)  
XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl in package SAX for C, [7-7](#)  
XmlSaxPI in package SAX for C, [7-6](#)  
XmlSaxStartDocument in package SAX for C, [7-8](#)  
XmlSaxStartElement in package SAX for C, [7-8](#)  
XmlSaxStartElementNS in package SAX for C, [7-9](#)  
XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl in package SAX for C, [7-10](#)  
XmlSaxWhitespace in package SAX for C, [7-10](#)  
XmlSaxXmlDecl in package SAX for C, [7-11](#)  
XmlSchemaClean in package Schema for C, [8-8](#)  
XmlSchemaCreate in package Schema for C, [8-1](#)  
XmlSchemaDestroy in package Schema for C, [8-2](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlSchemaErrorWhere in package Schema for C, [8-2](#)  
XmlSchemaLoad in package Schema for C, [8-3](#)  
XmlSchemaLoadedList in package Schema for C, [8-4](#)  
XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler in package Schema for C, [8-4](#)  
XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions in package Schema for C, [8-5](#)  
XmlSchemaTargetNamespace in package Schema for C, [8-6](#)  
XmlSchemaUnload in package Schema for C, [8-6](#)  
XmlSchemaValidate in package Schema for C, [8-7](#)  
XmlSchemaVersion in package Schema for C, [8-8](#)  
XmlSoapAddBodyElement in package SOAP for C, [9-2](#)  
XmlSoapAddFaultReason in package SOAP for C, [9-3](#)  
XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail in package SOAP for C, [9-4](#)  
XmlSoapAddHeaderElement in package SOAP for C, [9-4](#)  
XmlSoapCall in package SOAP for C, [9-5](#)  
XmlSoapCreateConnection in package SOAP for C, [9-6](#)  
XmlSoapCreateCtx in package SOAP for C, [9-7](#)  
XmlSoapCreateMsg in package SOAP for C, [9-8](#)  
XmlSoapDestroyConnection in package SOAP for C, [9-9](#)  
XmlSoapDestroyCtx in package SOAP for C, [9-9](#)  
XmlSoapDestroyMsg in package SOAP for C, [9-10](#)  
XmlSoapError in package SOAP for C, [9-10](#)  
XmlSoapGetBody in package SOAP for C, [9-11](#)  
XmlSoapGetBodyElement in package SOAP for C, [9-11](#)  
XmlSoapGetEnvelope in package SOAP for C, [9-12](#)  
XmlSoapGetFault in package SOAP for C, [9-13](#)  
XmlSoapGetHeader in package SOAP for C, [9-14](#)  
XmlSoapGetHeaderElement in package SOAP for C, [9-14](#)  
XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand in package SOAP for C, [9-15](#)  
XmlSoapGetReasonLang in package SOAP for C, [9-16](#)  
XmlSoapGetReasonNum in package SOAP for C, [9-16](#)  
XmlSoapGetRelay in package SOAP for C, [9-17](#)  
XmlSoapGetRole in package SOAP for C, [9-17](#)  
XmlSoapHasFault in package SOAP for C, [9-18](#)  
XmlSoapSetFault in package SOAP for C, [9-19](#)  
XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand in package SOAP for C, [9-20](#)  
XmlSoapSetRelay in package SOAP for C, [9-20](#)  
XmlSoapSetRole in package SOAP for C, [9-21](#)

methods (*continued*)

XmlVersion in package XML for C, [11-15](#)  
XmlXPathCreateCtx in package XPath for C, [13-1](#)  
XmlXPathDestroyCtx in package XPath for C, [13-2](#)  
XmlXPathEval in package XPath for C, [13-2](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean in package XPath for C, [13-3](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectFragment in package XPath for C, [13-3](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode in package XPath for C, [13-4](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum in package XPath for C, [13-4](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectNumber in package XPath for C, [13-5](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectString in package XPath for C, [13-5](#)  
XmlXPathGetObjectType in package XPath for C, [13-6](#)  
XmlXPathParse in package XPath for C, [13-6](#)  
XmlXPathPointerEval in package XPathPointer for C, [14-1](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetNode in package XPathPointer for C, [14-2](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetPoint in package XPathPointer for C, [14-2](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetRange in package XPathPointer for C, [14-3](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocGetType in package XPathPointer for C, [14-3](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetFree in package XPathPointer for C, [14-4](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetGetItem in package XPathPointer for C, [14-4](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocSetGetLength in package XPathPointer for C, [14-5](#)  
XmlXPathPtrLocToString in package XPathPointer for C, [14-3](#)  
XmlXslCreate in package XSLT for C, [15-1](#)  
XmlXslDestroy in package XSLT for C, [15-2](#)  
XmlXslGetBaseURI in package XSLT for C, [15-2](#)  
XmlXslGetOutput in package XSLT for C, [15-3](#)  
XmlXslGetStylesheetDom in package XSLT for C, [15-3](#)  
XmlXslGetTextParam in package XSLT for C, [15-3](#)  
XmlXslProcess in package XSLT for C, [15-4](#)  
XmlXslResetAllParams in package XSLT for C, [15-4](#)  
XmlXslSetOutputDom in package XSLT for C, [15-5](#)  
XmlXslSetOutputEncoding in package XSLT for C, [15-5](#)  
XmlXslSetOutputMethod in package XSLT for C, [15-5](#)  
XmlXslSetOutputSax in package XSLT for C, [15-6](#)  
XmlXslSetOutputStream in package XSLT for C, [15-6](#)  
XmlXslSetTextParam in package XSLT for C, [15-7](#)

methods (*continued*)

XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F in package XSLTVM for C, [16-7](#)  
XmlXvmCompileBuffer in package XSLTVM for C, [16-1](#)  
XmlXvmCompileDom in package XSLTVM for C, [16-2](#)  
XmlXvmCompileFile in package XSLTVM for C, [16-2](#)  
XmlXvmCompileURI in package XSLTVM for C, [16-3](#)  
XmlXvmCompileXPath in package XSLTVM for C, [16-4](#)  
XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM for C, [16-8](#)  
XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM for C, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM for C, [16-8](#)  
XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM for C, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package XSLTVM for C, [16-9](#)  
XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package XSLTVM for C, [16-5](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package XSLTVM for C, [16-9](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package XSLTVM for C, [16-10](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package XSLTVM for C, [16-10](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package XSLTVM for C, [16-11](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectString in package XSLTVM for C, [16-11](#)  
XmlXvmGetObjectType in package XSLTVM for C, [16-12](#)  
XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package XSLTVM for C, [16-12](#)  
XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM for C, [16-13](#)  
XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM for C, [16-13](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package XSLTVM for C, [16-14](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package XSLTVM for C, [16-14](#)  
XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package XSLTVM for C, [16-15](#)  
XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package XSLTVM for C, [16-15](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package XSLTVM for C, [16-16](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package XSLTVM for C, [16-16](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package XSLTVM for C, [16-17](#)  
XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package XSLTVM for C, [16-17](#)

methods (*continued*)

- XmlXvmSetTextParam in package XSLTVM for C, [16-18](#)
- XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package XSLTVM for C, [16-18](#)
- XmlXvmTransformDom in package XSLTVM for C, [16-19](#)
- XmlXvmTransformFile in package XSLTVM for C, [16-20](#)
- XmlXvmTransformURI in package XSLTVM for C, [16-20](#)

## P

---

packages

- Callback for C, [2-1](#)
- DOM for C, [3-1](#)
- Event for C, [4-1](#)
- Range for C, [6-1](#)
- SAX for C, [7-1](#)
- Schema for C, [8-1](#)
- SOAP for C, [9-1](#)
- Traversal for C, [10-1](#)
- XML for C, [11-1](#)
- XmlDiff for C, [12-1](#)
- XPath for C, [13-1](#)
- XPointer for C, [14-1](#)
- XSLT for C, [15-1](#)
- XSLTVM for C, [16-1](#)

## R

---

Range package for C, [6-1](#)

## S

---

SAX package for C, [7-1](#)  
Schema package for C, [8-1](#)  
SOAP package for C, [9-1](#)

## T

---

Traversal package for C, [10-1](#)

## X

---

XML package for C, [11-1](#)  
XML\_ACCESS\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ACCESS\_OPEN\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ACCESS\_READ\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ALLOC\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-1](#)  
XML\_ERRMSG\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-2](#)

XML\_FREE\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_CLOSE\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_OPEN\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_READ\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-2](#)  
XML\_STREAM\_WRITE\_F in package Callback package for C, [2-3](#)  
XmlAccess in package XML package for C, [11-2](#)  
XmlCreate in package XML package for C, [11-3](#)  
XmlCreateDocument in package XML package for C, [11-6](#)  
XmlCreateDTD in package XML package for C, [11-5](#)  
XmlDestroy in package XML package for C, [11-6](#)  
XmlDiff in package XML package for C, [11-7](#)  
XmlDiff in package XmlDiff package for C, [12-1](#)  
XmlDiff package for C, [12-1](#)  
XMLDOM\_ACCEPT\_NODE\_F in package Traversal package for C, [10-3](#)  
XmlDomAppendChild in package DOM package for C, [3-66](#)  
XmlDomAppendData in package DOM package for C, [3-12](#)  
XmlDomCleanNode in package DOM package for C, [3-67](#)  
XmlDomCloneNode in package DOM package for C, [3-68](#)  
XmlDomCreateAttr in package DOM package for C, [3-19](#)  
XmlDomCreateAttrNS in package DOM package for C, [3-20](#)  
XmlDomCreateCDATA in package DOM package for C, [3-21](#)  
XmlDomCreateComment in package DOM package for C, [3-22](#)  
XmlDomCreateElem in package DOM package for C, [3-22](#)  
XmlDomCreateElemNS in package DOM package for C, [3-23](#)  
XmlDomCreateEntityRef in package DOM package for C, [3-24](#)  
XmlDomCreateFragment in package DOM package for C, [3-25](#)  
XmlDomCreateNodelter in package Traversal package for C, [10-1](#)  
XmlDomCreatePI in package DOM package for C, [3-25](#)  
XmlDomCreateRange in package Range package for C, [6-2](#)  
XmlDomCreateText in package DOM package for C, [3-26](#)  
XmlDomCreateTreeWalker in package Traversal package for C, [10-2](#)  
XmlDomDeleteData in package DOM package for C, [3-13](#)  
XmlDomFreeNode in package DOM package for C, [3-68](#)



[XmlDomFreeNodeList](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-99](#)  
[XmlDomFreeString](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-27](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttr](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-44](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrLocal](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-2](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrLocalLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-2](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrName](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-3](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrNameLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-4](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-45](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrNodeNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-45](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-44](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrPrefix](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-5](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrs](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-69](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrSpecified](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-5](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrURI](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-6](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrURILen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-7](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrValue](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-8](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrValueLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-8](#)  
[XmlDomGetAttrValueStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-9](#)  
[XmlDomGetBaseURI](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-27](#)  
[XmlDomGetCharData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-13](#)  
[XmlDomGetCharDataLength](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-14](#)  
[XmlDomGetChildNodes](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-69](#)  
[XmlDomGetChildrenByTag](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-46](#)  
[XmlDomGetChildrenByTagNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-47](#)  
[XmlDomGetDecl](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-29](#)  
[XmlDomGetDefaultNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-70](#)  
[XmlDomGetDocElem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-29](#)  
[XmlDomGetDocElemByID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-30](#)  
[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTag](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-31](#)  
[XmlDomGetDocElemsByTagNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-31](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTD](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-28](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDEntities](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-39](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDInternalSubset](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-40](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDName](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-41](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDNotations](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-41](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDPubID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-42](#)  
[XmlDomGetDTDSysID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-42](#)  
[XmlDomGetElemsByTag](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-48](#)  
[XmlDomGetElemsByTagNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-48](#)  
[XmlDomGetEntityNotation](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-56](#)  
[XmlDomGetEntityPubID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-56](#)  
[XmlDomGetEntitySysID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-57](#)  
[XmlDomGetEntityType](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-57](#)  
[XmlDomGetFirstChild](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-70](#)  
[XmlDomGetFirstPfnPair](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-71](#)  
[XmlDomGetLastChild](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-72](#)  
[XmlDomGetLastError](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-32](#)  
[XmlDomGetNamedItem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-58](#)  
[XmlDomGetNamedItemNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-59](#)  
[XmlDomGetNextPfnPair](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-72](#)  
[XmlDomGetNextSibling](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-73](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeListItem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-99](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeListLength](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-100](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeLocal](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-73](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeLocalLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-74](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapItem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-60](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeMapLength](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-61](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeName](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-75](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeNameLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-76](#)

[XmlDomGetNodePrefix](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-77](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeType](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-77](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeURI](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-78](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeURILen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-79](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeValue](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-80](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeValueLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-81](#)  
[XmlDomGetNodeValueStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-82](#)  
[XmlDomGetNotationPubID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-100](#)  
[XmlDomGetNotationSysID](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-101](#)  
[XmlDomGetOwnerDocument](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-82](#)  
[XmlDomGetOwnerElem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-10](#)  
[XmlDomGetParentNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-83](#)  
[XmlDomGetPIData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-102](#)  
[XmlDomGetPITarget](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-102](#)  
[XmlDomGetPrevSibling](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-83](#)  
[XmlDomGetPullNodeAsBinaryStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-84](#)  
[XmlDomGetPullNodeAsCharacterStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-84](#)  
[XmlDomGetPushNodeAsBinaryStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-85](#)  
[XmlDomGetPushNodeAsCharacterStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-85](#)  
[XmlDomGetSchema](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-33](#)  
[XmlDomGetSourceEntity](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-86](#)  
[XmlDomGetSourceLine](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-86](#)  
[XmlDomGetSourceLocation](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-87](#)  
[XmlDomGetTag](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-49](#)  
[XmlDomHasAttr](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-50](#)  
[XmlDomHasAttrNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-50](#)  
[XmlDomHasAttrs](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-87](#)  
[XmlDomHasChildNodes](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-87](#)  
[XmlDomImportNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-33](#)  
[XmlDomInsertBefore](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-88](#)  
[XmlDomInsertData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-15](#)  
[XmlDomIsSchemaBased](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-34](#)  
[XmlDomIterDetach](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-4](#)  
[XmlDomIterNextNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-5](#)  
[XmlDomIterPrevNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-5](#)  
[XmlDomNormalize](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-89](#)  
[XmlDomNumAttrs](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-89](#)  
[XmlDomNumChildNodes](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-89](#)  
[XmlDomPrefixToURI](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-90](#)  
[XmlDomRangeClone](#) in package Range package for C, [6-2](#)  
[XmlDomRangeCloneContents](#) in package Range package for C, [6-3](#)  
[XmlDomRangeCollapse](#) in package Range package for C, [6-3](#)  
[XmlDomRangeCompareBoundaryPoints](#) in package Range package for C, [6-4](#)  
[XmlDomRangeDeleteContents](#) in package Range package for C, [6-5](#)  
[XmlDomRangeDetach](#) in package Range package for C, [6-5](#)  
[XmlDomRangeExtractContents](#) in package Range package for C, [6-5](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetCollapsed](#) in package Range package for C, [6-6](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetCommonAncestor](#) in package Range package for C, [6-6](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetDetached](#) in package Range package for C, [6-7](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetEndContainer](#) in package Range package for C, [6-7](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetEndOffset](#) in package Range package for C, [6-8](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetStartContainer](#) in package Range package for C, [6-8](#)  
[XmlDomRangeGetStartOffset](#) in package Range package for C, [6-9](#)  
[XmlDomRangeIsConsistent](#) in package Range package for C, [6-9](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSelectNode](#) in package Range package for C, [6-10](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSelectNodeContents](#) in package Range package for C, [6-10](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSetEnd](#) in package Range package for C, [6-11](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSetEndBefore](#) in package Range package for C, [6-12](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSetStart](#) in package Range package for C, [6-12](#)

[XmlDomRangeSetStartAfter](#) in package Range package for C, [6-13](#)  
[XmlDomRangeSetStartBefore](#) in package Range package for C, [6-13](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveAttr](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-51](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveAttrNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-52](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveAttrNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-52](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveChild](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-90](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveNamedItem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-61](#)  
[XmlDomRemoveNamedItemNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-62](#)  
[XmlDomRenameNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-91](#)  
[XmlDomRenameNodeNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-92](#)  
[XmlDomReplaceChild](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-92](#)  
[XmlDomReplaceData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-15](#)  
[XmlDomSaveString](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-35](#)  
[XmlDomSaveString2](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-36](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttr](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-53](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttrNode](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-54](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttrNodeNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-55](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttrNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-54](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttrValue](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-10](#)  
[XmlDomSetAttrValueStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-11](#)  
[XmlDomSetBaseURI](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-36](#)  
[XmlDomSetCharData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-16](#)  
[XmlDomSetDefaultNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-93](#)  
[XmlDomSetDocOrder](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-38](#)  
[XmlDomSetDTD](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-37](#)  
[XmlDomSetLastError](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-38](#)  
[XmlDomSetNamedItem](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-62](#)  
[XmlDomSetNamedItemNS](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-63](#)  
[XmlDomSetNodePrefix](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-93](#)  
[XmlDomSetNodeValue](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-94](#)  
[XmlDomSetNodeValueLen](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-95](#)  
[XmlDomSetNodeValueStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-95](#)  
[XmlDomSetPIData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-103](#)  
[XmlDomSetPullNodeAsBinaryStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-96](#)  
[XmlDomSetPullNodeAsCharacterStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-96](#)  
[XmlDomSetPushNodeAsBinaryStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-97](#)  
[XmlDomSetPushNodeAsCharacterStream](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-97](#)  
[XmlDomSplitText](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-104](#)  
[XmlDomSubstringData](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-17](#)  
[XmlDomSync](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-39](#)  
[XmlDomValidate](#) in package DOM package for C, [3-98](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerFirstChild](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-7](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerGetCurrentNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-7](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerGetRoot](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-8](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerLastChild](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-8](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerNextNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-9](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerNextSibling](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-9](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerParentNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-10](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-11](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerPrevSibling](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-11](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerSetCurrentNode](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-12](#)  
[XmlDomWalkerSetRoot](#) in package Traversal package for C, [10-13](#)  
[XmlEvCleanPPCtx](#) in package Event package for C, [4-5](#)  
[XmlEvCreatePPCtx](#) in package Event package for C, [4-6](#)  
[XmlEvCreateSVCtx](#) in package Event package for C, [4-7](#)  
[XmlEvDestroyPPCtx](#) in package Event package for C, [4-8](#)  
[XmlEvDestroySVCtx](#) in package Event package for C, [4-8](#)  
[XmlEvGetAttrCount](#) in package Event package for C, [4-9](#)  
[XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody](#) in package Event package for C, [4-9](#)

XmlEvGetAttrDeclBody0 in package Event package for C, [4-10](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclCount in package Event package for C, [4-10](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName in package Event package for C, [4-11](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclElName0 in package Event package for C, [4-11](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName in package Event package for C, [4-11](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclLocalName0 in package Event package for C, [4-12](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclName in package Event package for C, [4-12](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclName0 in package Event package for C, [4-13](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix in package Event package for C, [4-13](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrDeclPrefix0 in package Event package for C, [4-14](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrID in package Event package for C, [4-14](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrLocalName in package Event package for C, [4-15](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrLocalName0 in package Event package for C, [4-15](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrName in package Event package for C, [4-16](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrName0 in package Event package for C, [4-16](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrPrefix in package Event package for C, [4-17](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrPrefix0 in package Event package for C, [4-17](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrURI in package Event package for C, [4-18](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrURI0 in package Event package for C, [4-18](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrUriID in package Event package for C, [4-19](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrValue in package Event package for C, [4-19](#)  
 XmlEvGetAttrValue0 in package Event package for C, [4-20](#)  
 XmlEvGetElDeclContent in package Event package for C, [4-20](#)  
 XmlEvGetElDeclContent0 in package Event package for C, [4-21](#)  
 XmlEvGetEncoding in package Event package for C, [4-21](#)  
 XmlEvGetError in package Event package for C, [4-21](#)  
 XmlEvGetLocalName in package Event package for C, [4-23](#)  
 XmlEvGetLocalName0 in package Event package for C, [4-23](#)  
 XmlEvGetLocation in package Event package for C, [4-24](#)  
 XmlEvGetName in package Event package for C, [4-22](#)  
 XmlEvGetName0 in package Event package for C, [4-22](#)  
 XmlEvGetPEisGen in package Event package for C, [4-26](#)  
 XmlEvGetPERepl in package Event package for C, [4-26](#)  
 XmlEvGetPERepl0 in package Event package for C, [4-27](#)  
 XmlEvGetPIData in package Event package for C, [4-24](#)  
 XmlEvGetPIData0 in package Event package for C, [4-25](#)  
 XmlEvGetPITarget in package Event package for C, [4-25](#)  
 XmlEvGetPITarget0 in package Event package for C, [4-26](#)  
 XmlEvGetPrefix in package Event package for C, [4-27](#)  
 XmlEvGetPrefix0 in package Event package for C, [4-28](#)  
 XmlEvGetPubId in package Event package for C, [4-28](#)  
 XmlEvGetPubId0 in package Event package for C, [4-29](#)  
 XmlEvGetSysId in package Event package for C, [4-29](#)  
 XmlEvGetSysId0 in package Event package for C, [4-30](#)  
 XmlEvGetTagID in package Event package for C, [4-30](#)  
 XmlEvGetTagUriID in package Event package for C, [4-31](#)  
 XmlEvGetText in package Event package for C, [4-31](#)  
 XmlEvGetText0 in package Event package for C, [4-32](#)  
 XmlEvGetUENdata in package Event package for C, [4-32](#)  
 XmlEvGetUENdata0 in package Event package for C, [4-33](#)  
 XmlEvGetURI in package Event package for C, [4-33](#)  
 XmlEvGetURI0 in package Event package for C, [4-34](#)  
 XmlEvGetVersion in package Event package for C, [4-34](#)  
 XmlEvIsEncodingSpecified in package Event package for C, [4-34](#)  
 XmlEvIsStandalone in package Event package for C, [4-35](#)  
 XmlEvLoadPPDoc in package Event package for C, [4-36](#)  
 XmlEvNamespaceAttr in package Event package for C, [4-35](#)  
 XmlEvNext in package Event package for C, [4-36](#)  
 XmlEvNextTag in package Event package for C, [4-36](#)  
 XmlEvSchemaValidate in package Event package for C, [4-37](#)  
 XmlFreeDocument in package XML package for C, [11-8](#)  
 XmlGetEncoding in package XML package for C, [11-9](#)  
 XmlHasFeature in package XML package for C, [11-9](#)  
 XmlHash in package XPath package for C, [12-3](#)  
 XmlIsSimple in package XML package for C, [11-10](#)  
 XmlIsUnicode in package XML package for C, [11-10](#)  
 XmlLoadDom in package XML package for C, [11-11](#)  
 XmlLoadSax in package XML package for C, [11-12](#)

XmlLoadSaxVA in package XML package for C, [11-13](#)  
 XmlPatch in package XmlDiff package for C, [12-4](#)  
 XmlSaveDom in package XML package for C, [11-14](#)  
 XmlSaxAttributeDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-2](#)  
 XmlSaxBeginGen in package SAX package for C, [7-2](#)  
 XmlSaxCDATA in package SAX package for C, [7-3](#)  
 XmlSaxCharacters in package SAX package for C, [7-3](#)  
 XmlSaxComment in package SAX package for C, [7-4](#)  
 XmlSaxElementDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-4](#)  
 XmlSaxEndDocument in package SAX package for C, [7-5](#)  
 XmlSaxEndElement in package SAX package for C, [7-6](#)  
 XmlSaxEndGen in package SAX package for C, [7-6](#)  
 XmlSaxNotationDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-6](#)  
 XmlSaxParsedEntityDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-7](#)  
 XmlSaxPI in package SAX package for C, [7-6](#)  
 XmlSaxStartDocument in package SAX package for C, [7-8](#)  
 XmlSaxStartElement in package SAX package for C, [7-8](#)  
 XmlSaxStartElementNS in package SAX package for C, [7-9](#)  
 XmlSaxUnparsedEntityDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-10](#)  
 XmlSaxWhitespace in package SAX package for C, [7-10](#)  
 XmlSaxXmlDecl in package SAX package for C, [7-11](#)  
 XmlSchemaClean in package Schema package for C, [8-8](#)  
 XmlSchemaCreate in package Schema package for C, [8-1](#)  
 XmlSchemaDestroy in package Schema package for C, [8-2](#)  
 XmlSchemaErrorWhere in package Schema package for C, [8-2](#)  
 XmlSchemaLoad in package Schema package for C, [8-3](#)  
 XmlSchemaLoadedList in package Schema package for C, [8-4](#)  
 XmlSchemaSetErrorHandler in package Schema package for C, [8-4](#)  
 XmlSchemaSetValidateOptions in package Schema package for C, [8-5](#)  
 XmlSchemaTargetNamespace in package Schema package for C, [8-6](#)  
 XmlSchemaUnload in package Schema package for C, [8-6](#)  
 XmlSchemaValidate in package Schema package for C, [8-7](#)  
 XmlSchemaVersion in package Schema package for C, [8-8](#)  
 XmlSoapAddBodyElement in package SOAP package for C, [9-2](#)  
 XmlSoapAddFaultReason in package SOAP package for C, [9-3](#)  
 XmlSoapAddFaultSubDetail in package SOAP package for C, [9-4](#)  
 XmlSoapAddHeaderElement in package SOAP package for C, [9-4](#)  
 XmlSoapCall in package SOAP package for C, [9-5](#)  
 XmlSoapCreateConnection in package SOAP package for C, [9-6](#)  
 XmlSoapCreateCtx in package SOAP package for C, [9-7](#)  
 XmlSoapCreateMsg in package SOAP package for C, [9-8](#)  
 XmlSoapDestroyConnection in package SOAP package for C, [9-9](#)  
 XmlSoapDestroyCtx in package SOAP package for C, [9-9](#)  
 XmlSoapDestroyMsg in package SOAP package for C, [9-10](#)  
 XmlSoapError in package SOAP package for C, [9-10](#)  
 XmlSoapGetBody in package SOAP package for C, [9-11](#)  
 XmlSoapGetBodyElement in package SOAP package for C, [9-11](#)  
 XmlSoapGetEnvelope in package SOAP package for C, [9-12](#)  
 XmlSoapGetFault in package SOAP package for C, [9-13](#)  
 XmlSoapGetHeader in package SOAP package for C, [9-14](#)  
 XmlSoapGetHeaderElement in package SOAP package for C, [9-14](#)  
 XmlSoapGetMustUnderstand in package SOAP package for C, [9-15](#)  
 XmlSoapGetReasonLang in package SOAP package for C, [9-16](#)  
 XmlSoapGetReasonNum in package SOAP package for C, [9-16](#)  
 XmlSoapGetRelay in package SOAP package for C, [9-17](#)  
 XmlSoapGetRole in package SOAP package for C, [9-17](#)  
 XmlSoapHasFault in package SOAP package for C, [9-18](#)  
 XmlSoapSetFault in package SOAP package for C, [9-19](#)  
 XmlSoapSetMustUnderstand in package SOAP package for C, [9-20](#)  
 XmlSoapSetRelay in package SOAP package for C, [9-20](#)  
 XmlSoapSetRole in package SOAP package for C, [9-21](#)  
 XmlVersion in package XML package for C, [11-15](#)  
 XmlXPathCreateCtx in package XPath package for C, [13-1](#)  
 XmlXPathDestroyCtx in package XPath package for C, [13-2](#)  
 XmlXPathEval in package XPath package for C, [13-2](#)

XmlXPathGetObjectBoolean in package XPath package for C, [13-3](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectFragment in package XPath package for C, [13-3](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNode in package XPath package for C, [13-4](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectNSetNum in package XPath package for C, [13-4](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectNumber in package XPath package for C, [13-5](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectString in package XPath package for C, [13-5](#)  
 XmlXPathGetObjectType in package XPath package for C, [13-6](#)  
 XmlXPathParse in package XPath package for C, [13-6](#)  
 XmlXPathPointerEval in package XPointer package for C, [14-1](#)  
 XmlXPathLocGetNode in package XPointer package for C, [14-2](#)  
 XmlXPathLocGetPoint in package XPointer package for C, [14-2](#)  
 XmlXPathLocGetRange in package XPointer package for C, [14-3](#)  
 XmlXPathLocGetType in package XPointer package for C, [14-3](#)  
 XmlXPathLocSetFree in package XPointer package for C, [14-4](#)  
 XmlXPathLocSetGetItem in package XPointer package for C, [14-4](#)  
 XmlXPathLocSetGetLength in package XPointer package for C, [14-5](#)  
 XmlXPathLocToString in package XPointer package for C, [14-3](#)  
 XmlXsltCreate in package XSLT package for C, [15-1](#)  
 XmlXsltDestroy in package XSLT package for C, [15-2](#)  
 XmlXsltGetBaseURI in package XSLT package for C, [15-2](#)  
 XmlXsltGetOutput in package XSLT package for C, [15-3](#)  
 XmlXsltGetStylesheetDom in package XSLT package for C, [15-3](#)  
 XmlXsltGetTextParam in package XSLT package for C, [15-3](#)  
 XmlXsltProcess in package XSLT package for C, [15-4](#)  
 XmlXsltResetAllParams in package XSLT package for C, [15-4](#)  
 XmlXsltSetOutputDom in package XSLT package for C, [15-5](#)  
 XmlXsltSetOutputEncoding in package XSLT package for C, [15-5](#)  
 XmlXsltSetOutputMethod in package XSLT package for C, [15-5](#)  
 XmlXsltSetOutputSax in package XSLT package for C, [15-6](#)  
 XmlXsltSetOutputStream in package XSLT package for C, [15-6](#)  
 XmlXsltSetTextParam in package XSLT package for C, [15-7](#)  
 XMLXVM\_DEBUG\_F in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-7](#)  
 XmlXvmCompileBuffer in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-1](#)  
 XmlXvmCompileDom in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-2](#)  
 XmlXvmCompileFile in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-2](#)  
 XmlXvmCompileURI in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-3](#)  
 XmlXvmCompileXPath in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-4](#)  
 XmlXvmCreate in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-8](#)  
 XmlXvmCreateComp in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-5](#)  
 XmlXvmDestroy in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-8](#)  
 XmlXvmDestroyComp in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-5](#)  
 XmlXvmEvaluateXPath in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-9](#)  
 XmlXvmGetBytecodeLength in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-5](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectBoolean in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-9](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNode in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-10](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNSetNum in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-10](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectNumber in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-11](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectString in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-11](#)  
 XmlXvmGetObjectType in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-12](#)  
 XmlXvmGetOutputDom in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-12](#)  
 XmlXvmResetParams in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-13](#)  
 XmlXvmSetBaseURI in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-13](#)  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeBuffer in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-14](#)  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeFile in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-14](#)  
 XmlXvmSetBytecodeURI in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-15](#)  
 XmlXvmSetDebugFunc in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-15](#)  
 XmlXvmSetOutputDom in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-16](#)  
 XmlXvmSetOutputEncoding in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-16](#)  
 XmlXvmSetOutputSax in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-17](#)  
 XmlXvmSetOutputStream in package XSLTVM package for C, [16-17](#)

XmlXvmSetTextParam in package XSLTVM package  
for C, [16-18](#)  
XmlXvmTransformBuffer in package XSLTVM  
package for C, [16-18](#)  
XmlXvmTransformDom in package XSLTVM package  
for C, [16-19](#)  
XmlXvmTransformFile in package XSLTVM package  
for C, [16-20](#)

XmlXvmTransformURI in package XSLTVM package  
for C, [16-20](#)  
XPath package for C, [13-1](#)  
XPointer package for C, [14-1](#)  
XSLT package for C, [15-1](#)  
XSLTVM package for C, [16-1](#)

